

TIME FOR
English
By A Group Of Supervisors
المعاصر فى
اللغة الإنجليزية
للصف السادس الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الأول
معاك
Ma3akApp
التطبيق التفاعلى
للتعلم عن بعد
6th
Primary
2022
FIRST TERM
EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

CONTENTS

PART ONE

PART TWO

GET READY!





1. Parts of speech:

١.أجزاء الكلام :





1 noun الإسم



goat عنزة



bag حقيبة



boy ولد



Salma سلمى

2 verb الفعل



eat يأكل



read يقرأ



play يلعب



run يجرى

3 adjective الصفة



small ant
نملة صغيرة



big camel
جمل كبير

4 preposition حرف جر



in the morning
فى الصباح

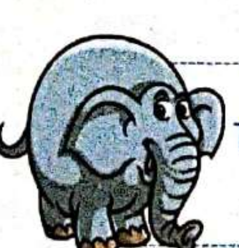


on the table
على المنضدة

5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.
آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.
الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.



2. Question Words

١. كلمات الإستفهام

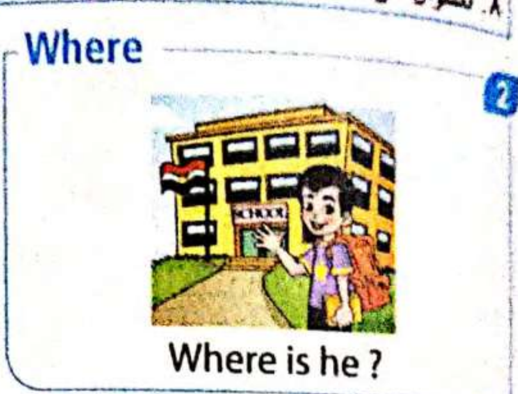
Question words	كلمات الإستفهام	Usage الاستخدام
1. Who .....?	من ......؟	١. للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل
2. Where .....?	أين ......؟	٢. للسؤال عن المكان
3. When .....?	متى ......؟	٣. للسؤال عن الزمان
4. Whose .....?	ملك من ......؟	٤. للسؤال عن الملكية
5. What .....?	ما / ماذا ......؟	٥. للسؤال عن الفاعل غير العاقل
6. How .....?	كيف ......؟	٦. للسؤال عن الوسيلة / الكيفية / الحالة
7. Which .....?	أيهما ......؟	٧. للاختيار بين شيئين
8. Why .....?	لماذا ......؟	٨. للسؤال عن السبب

Who 1



Who is he ?

Where 2



Where is he ?

When 3



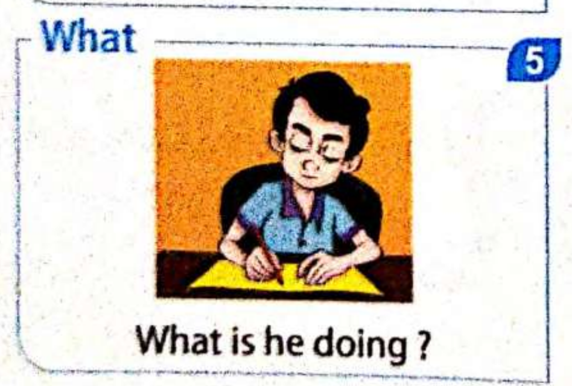
When does he watch videos ?

Whose 4



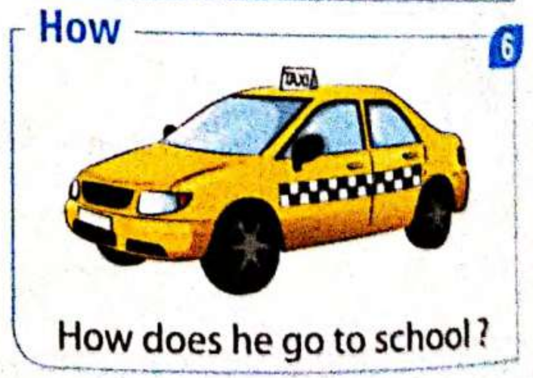
Whose jacket is this ?

What 5



What is he doing ?

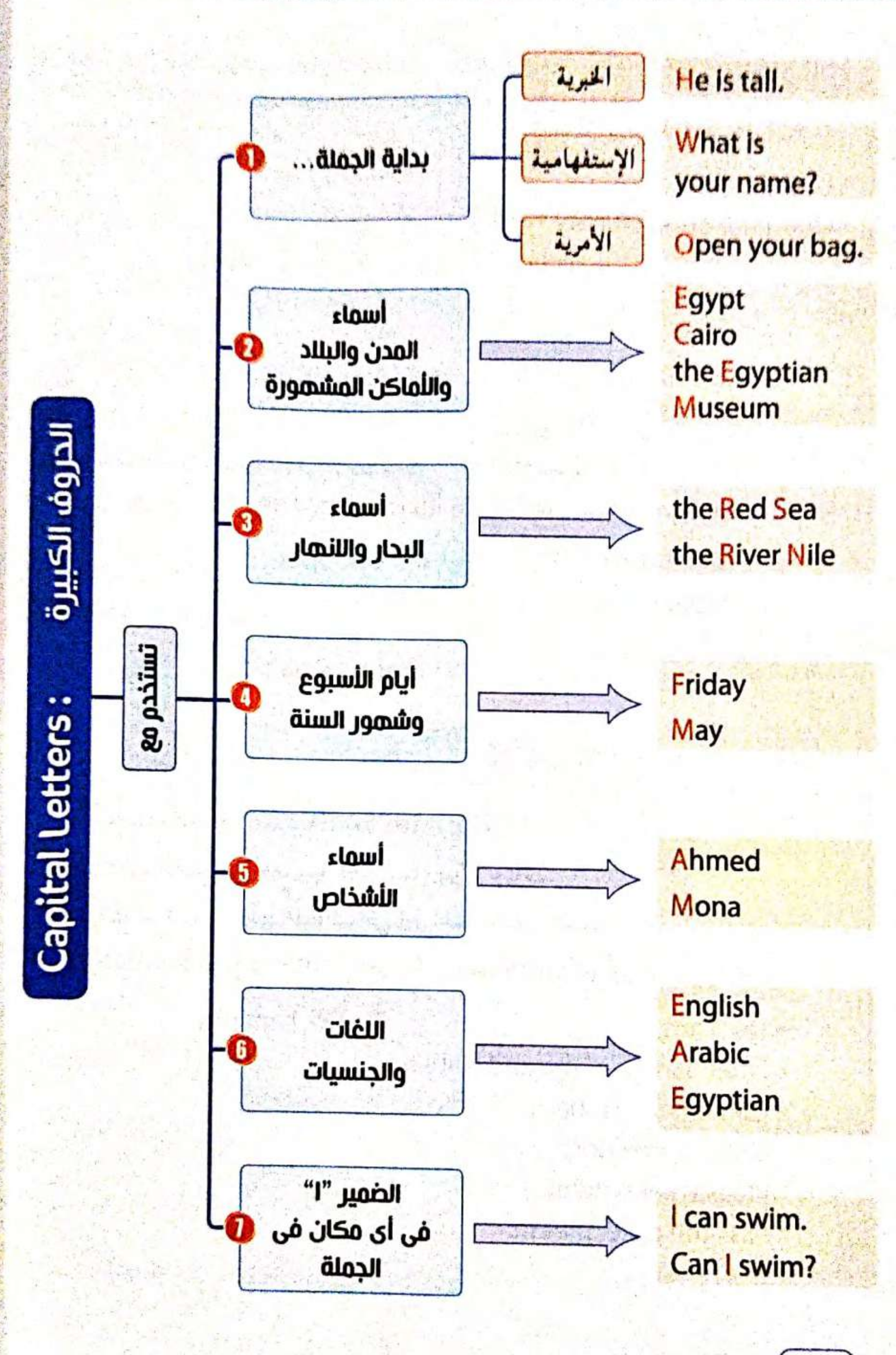
How 6



How does he go to school ?

3. Punctuation Marks

٣. علامات الترقيم



Full stop

توضع النقطة فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

* I am Kareem.
* Open the door, please.



Question mark

توضع علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

How are you ?



Exclamation mark

تستخدم علامة التعجب فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

Wow !
Don't run !
Hello !
Oh !
Help !
Hi !



Apostrophe



١. تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') فى الاختصارات مثل (is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع ('s) الملكية.

That is Heba's car.

Comma

١. تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) بعد Yes أو No.
٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.
٣. توضع الفاصلة (,) بعد المخاطب فى أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب فى آخر الجملة.
٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) فى آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

* Yes, I am.
* No, I am not.
* I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
* Come here, Noha.
* Noha, come here.
* Please, keep quiet.
* Pass the cake, please.



4. Writing Skill

٤. مهارة الكتابة

لإتقان مهارة الكتابة انظر كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

1. How to write a paragraph :

١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

⊙ القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.

٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.

٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.

٤. إتبع كل علامات الترقيم.

٥. إبدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونّوع بدايات الجمل.

٦. إستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.

٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.

٨. إجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

٩. إستخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

2. How to write an email :

٢. كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

موضوع الرسالة

Yours,

اسم الراسل


Mohamed
Habiba
Samy
Dalia
Ahmed
Sarah
Mona
Ali
Hoda
Kareem

Do You Remember ?

Listen and repeat
استمع وردد

1



Mona : Hi! I'm Mona Samy. He's Kareem Ahmed. My puppet's name is Sokkara.

Kareem : We're making dinner. We're going to have spaghetti.

Sokkara : Yum ! My favourite !

منى : أهلًا ! أنا منى سامى. هو كريم أحمد. دميتى تدعى سكرة.

كريم : نحن نعد وجبة العشاء. نحن سوف نتناول مكرونة اسباجتى.

سكرة : لذيذة ! إنها المفضلة لدىَّ!

2



Mona : I'm fourteen.

Kareem : I'm fourteen, too.

Sokkara : Smells good.

منى : أنا عمرى ١٤ سنة.

كريم : وأنا عمرى أيضًا ١٤ سنة.

سكرة : تبدو رائحتها جيدة.

3



Mona : We like playing video games.

Kareem : I want to program computers. Mona wants to be an engineer.

منى : نحن نحب ألعاب الڤيديو.

كريم : أريد أن أبرمج أجهزة الحاسب الآلى. تريد منى أن تكون مهندسة.

4



Mona : Monkeys and giraffes are my favourite animals.

Kareem : I like dolphins.

Sokkara : I like puppets.

منى : القرود والزراف حيواناتى المفضلة.

كريم : أحب الدلافين.

سكرة : أحب الدمى.

A. Read and tick the best response.

1. I'm really thirsty.
   - ☐ Me, too. Let's get some juice.
   - ☐ Yes, but look at my skateboard.

2. Come on. Just a little.
   - ☐ Um, okay. I'll take this one.
   - ☐ Oh, all right. But not too much.

3. You're kidding!
   - ☐ It's time for breakfast.
   - ☐ No, it's true. I made it.

4. You play really well.
   - ☐ Thanks. I love playing music.
   - ☐ Oh, no! I missed it.

5. I don't have enough money.
   - ☐ That's okay. It's my treat.
   - ☐ I want to buy a gift for my dad.

B. Find and circle the words. Then write .

s	n	o	r	k	e	l	u	w	i	n	t	e	r	v	w	u	H	i	e	s
h	j	u	S	t	a	t	r	g	i	r	a	f	f	e	h	b	a	p	k	o
a	k	r	e	m	c	h	n	d	b	d	c	d	r	S	a	t	u	r	n	u
r	s	l	b	f	s	i	n	g	w	t	o	i	o	z	l	l	t	s	g	p
k	g	v	s	l	k	n	a	r	t	i	s	t	l	k	e	Z	u	k	d	v

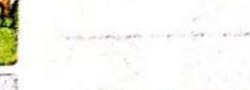


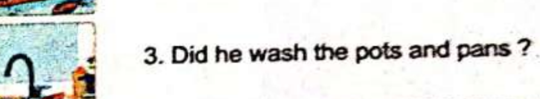




C. Read the question. Write the answer.


1. Which one is faster ? ....


2. What do they like to do ? ....


3. Did he wash the pots and pans ? ....


4. Why does he want to be a musician ? ....

5. Is the shark bigger than the octopus ? ....

D. Fill in the blanks. Then number the pictures.

1. Unc ...... Ahmed ate lobst ...... in a s ...... cer.
2. The g ...... l with a p ...... se p ...... nted to the m ...... n.
3. Salma chopp ...... some w ...... d and dust ...... the b ...... n.

ed
ir
le
oo
ed
oi
ur
er
oo
au
ar




Classroom Language

Vocabulary

paper	ورقة	parents	والدين
test	اختبار	permission	إذن / سماح
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
exercise	تمرين / تدريب	forget	ينسى

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

1



Teacher : Please, number your papers from one to five. We're going to have a spelling test.

المعلمة : من فضلكم رقموا الأوراق الخاصة بكم من واحد إلى خمسة. سنعقد امتحان تهجي.

2



Teacher : Samy, will you turn on the CD player, please ? Go to track ten.

Samy : Okay.

المعلمة : من فضلك يا سامي، هل يمكن أن تشغل مشغل الأسطوانات المدمجة ؟ وانتقل إلى المقطوعة المسجلة رقم ١٠ على الأسطوانة.

سامي : حسنًا.

3



Heba : What's the homework for tomorrow ?

Teacher : Do the exercises on page three in your workbook.

هبة : ما هو الواجب المنزلي للغد ؟

المعلمة : قوموا بحل التدريبات في الصفحة الثالثة في كتاب التدريبات.

4



Teacher : We're going on a field trip on Thursday. Please ask your parents to sign your permission form.

Kareem : Where are we going ?

Teacher : The Egyptian Museum.

المعلمة : سنذهب فى رحلة ميدانية (الغرض منها الدراسة) يوم الخميس. من فضلكم اطلبوا من أولياء أموركم التوقيع على استمارة الإذن بالذهاب.

كريـــم : إلى أين سنذهب ؟

المعلمة : إلى المتحف المصرى.

5



Teacher : Mona, please stay after class and finish your homework.

Mona : Okay, Miss Nadia.

المعلمة : انتظرى يا منى، من فضلك بعد الحصة وانتهى من أداء واجبك المنزلى.

منـــى : حسنًا، يا أستاذة نادية.

6



Teacher : Have a good weekend, class! Don't forget, your projects are due on Sunday.

Kareem : Bye, Miss Nadia!

المعلمة : أتمنى لكم عطلة نهاية أسبوع ممتعة ولا تنسوا أن أبحاثكم الدراسية مطلوبة يوم الأحد.

كريـــم : إلى اللقاء، يا أستاذة نادية!

UNIT 1

Places We Go

الأماكن التي نذهب إليها



- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- ask about museum hours, entrance fees & exhibits over the telephone

– السؤال عن ساعات عمل المتحف ورسوم الدخول والمعروضات بالمتحف عبر الهاتف.

- ask about past locations

– السؤال عن الأماكن التي كانت موجودة في الماضي

- identify speakers in a conversation

– للتعرف على المتكلمين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a historical narrative

– قراءة نص سرد تاريخي

Vocabulary

- public buildings & structures

– المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالمباني والمنشآت العامة

Grammar

- prepositions of location

– تعلم حروف الجر الخاصة بتحديد المكان

- Yes / No questions with was

– تعلم السؤال بـ «هل .... ؟» مع فعل «يكون» في الماضي

لإتقان الوحدة :

- كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.
- Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.
- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

Conversation Time

SB page 1 WB page 1

Key Vocabulary

daily	يومى / يوميًا	the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصرى
foreigner	شخص اجنبى	Egyptians	مصريون
free	مجانى	adult	شخص كبير / بالغ
include	يتضمن / يشمل	cost	يتكلف / تكلفة
Mummy rooms	حجرات المومياء	under	تحت / دون السن

Notes

١. تبدأ المدن والجنسيات والأماكن المشهورة بحرف كبير (capital).

- Mummy rooms - the Egyptian Museum

٢. حرف (g) فى كلمة (foreigner) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

٣. يستخدم حرف الجر (under) بمعنى أسفل وعندما يأتى بعده رقم يكون بمعنى (أقل / دون سن).

- Children under five are free.

٤. يستخدم حرف الجر (for) بمعنى (لـ / لأجل).

- for Egyptians للمصريين

Active Vocabulary

places	أماكن	How many ...?	كم (للعدد) ...؟
receptionist	موظف استقبال	except	ماعدا /باستثناء
Fridays	أيام الجمعة	chimp	شمبانزى
L.E = pound	جنيه مصرى	hours	ساعات (العمل)
children	أطفال	get out	يخرج
a.m.	صباحًا	open	مفتوح
p.m.	مساءً	welcome	مرحبًا
a nice day	يوم لطيف	film theatre = cinema	سينما
How much ...?	كم ثمن ...؟	holiday	أجازة

Notes

١. يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع بمعنى «فى» :

- on Friday - on Sunday

٢. تستخدم كلمة (open) كفعل بمعنى يفتح وكصفة بمعنى مفتوح.

- Open the door. - The museum is open from 7:00 to 10:00.

٣. هناك أسماء مفردة غير منتظمة عند جمعها لا يضاف لها (s).

- child → children أطفال - man → men رجال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past ماضى
help	يساعد	helped		go	يذهب	went
open	يفتح	opened		get in	يدخل	got in
include	يشمل	included		cost	يتكلف/يكلف	cost
welcome	يرحب	welcomed		have / has	يملك/يتناول	had
thank	يشكر	thanked				

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

1. theatre - library - help - museum (..................)

(القاهرة - الزايلي ٢٠٢٠)

2. get up - open - have - hour (..................)
3. between - blue - from - to (..................)
4. Thursday - Monday - May - Tuesday (..................)
5. Why - What - When - Sunday (..................)

Telephoning a museum الاتصال بالمتحف

- **Characters** شخصيات المحادثة



- **Topic** موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is a telephone call between Kareem, who is calling a museum and a woman who works at the museum.

محادثة اليوم هى مكالمة تليفونية بين كريم الذى يتصل بالمتحف والسيدة التى تعمل به.



A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Receptionist: Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you ?

موظفة الاستقبال : صباح الخير، المتحف المصرى، كيف يمكننى أن أساعدك ؟

Kareem : Hi! What are your hours ?

Receptionist : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.

كريم : أهلاً وسهلاً! ما هى ساعات عملكم ؟

موظفة الاستقبال : نحن نفتح من الساعة التاسعة إلى الساعة السابعة.

Kareem : Are you open on Fridays ?

Receptionist : Yes. We're open daily.

كريم : هل المتحف مفتوح فى أيام الجمعة ؟

موظفة الاستقبال : نعم، المتحف مفتوح يوميًا.

Kareem : How much does it cost to get in ?

Receptionist : It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free.

كريم : كم ثمن تكلفة الدخول ؟

موظفة الاستقبال : جنيهان للمصريين وعشرون جنيهًا للأجانب. والدخول للأطفال دون سن الخامسة بالمجان.

Kareem : Does that include the Mummy rooms ?

Receptionist : No, it doesn't.

كريم : هل ذلك يشمل حجرات المومياء ؟

موظفة الاستقبال : لا، لا يشمل ذلك.

Kareem : Thanks for your help.

Receptionist : You're welcome. Have a nice day.

كريم : شكرًا لمساعدتك.

موظفة الاستقبال : على الرحب والسعة. أتمنى لك يومًا رائعًا.

Language Functions

1

- عند التحية نستخدم :
- Good morning   - صباح الخير
- لعرض المساعدة نستخدم :
- How can I help you ?
- كيف يمكننى أن أساعدك ؟



2

- للسؤال عن مواعيد العمل نستخدم :
- What are your hours ?
- ما هى ساعات عملكم ؟
- from .... to ....
- من .... إلى ....



3

- للسؤال عن أيام العمل لمكان ما نستخدم :
- Are you open on أيام الاسبوع ?
- هل تفتحون أيام الاسبوع ؟
- هناك بعض الأفعال تستخدم كصفة مثل : open
- We're open daily.
- المتحف مفتوح يوميًا.

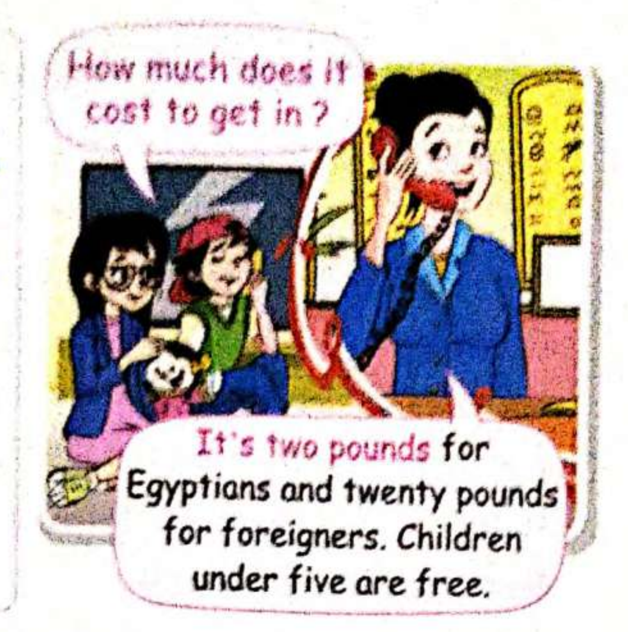




• للسؤال عن تكلفة الدخول الى مكان ما نستخدم :
- How much does it cost to get in?
- كم تكلفة الدخول ؟
• وللرد :
- It's + المبلغ.
- It's two pounds.

* cost to + (inf. مصدر الفعل) } يتكلف
* cost for + (noun اسم) }

- How much does it cost to get in?
- How much does it cost for children?







• للسؤال عن مشتملات العرض نستخدم :
- Does that include ... ?
- هل ذلك يشمل ... ؟
• وللرد:
- Yes, it does. — عند الموافقة
- No, it doesn't. — عند عدم الموافقة

6

• لشكر شخص على مساعدته نستخدم :
- Thanks for your help.
- شكرًا على مساعدتكم.
• وللرد:
- You're welcome.
- على الرحب والسعة (العفو).
• لوداع شخص ما متمنيًا له قضاء وقت لطيف :
- Have a nice day.
- أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا.



Exercise on Language Functions

● Listen and complete :

استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

Hala : Is it the (1) .... Museum ?

Receptionist : Yes, it is.

Hala : When are you (2) .... ?

Receptionist : We are open (3) ....

Hala : Thank you for your help.

Receptionist : You are (4) ....

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملاءك للمحادثة السابقة.



General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete : استمع الى معلمك واكمل :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

Mona : Where are you going ?
Ali : I am going to the Egyptian (1) ....
Mona : How much does it (2) .... to get in ?
Ali : It's two pounds for (3) ....
Mona : Does that include the (4) .... rooms ?
Ali : No, it doesn't.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We are open .... except on holidays.
(امتحان مجمع القاهرة – السيدة زينب ٢٠٢١)
a. week b. day c. month d. daily

2. How .... does it cost to get in ? (امتحان مجمع سوهاج – طما ٢٠٢١)
a. often b. much c. many d. tall

3. .... you open on Fridays ? (امتحان مجمع بورسعيد ٢٠٢١)
a. Is b. Are c. Do d. Was

4. When I visited the museum, I saw the .... rooms.
a. Mummy b. Class c. Art d. Music

5. The museum is .... daily from 9:00 to 7:00.
a. free b. open c. good d. bad

6. What .... your hours ? - We are open from 9:00 to 7:00.
a. do b. is c. are d. have
(امتحان مجمع المنوفية – منوف ٢٠٢١)

7. No, it .... include the Mummy rooms.
(امتحان مجمع البحيرة – كوم حمادة ٢٠٢١)
a. don't b. is c. does d. doesn't

8. It's only two .... for Egyptians.
a. Fridays b. children c. museums d. pounds
(امتحان مجمع الغربية – طنطا ٢٠٢١)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions : اقرأ الفقرة وأجب على الأسئلة :

The Egyptian Museum is open on Fridays. It costs two pounds for a four-year-old child to get in. Kareem who is four wants to go to the museum on Tuesday. There is a free tour to the Mummy rooms. The woman who works at the museum says that they're open daily from 8:00 am to 8:00 pm. If Kareem's mother and father go to the museum, they will pay ten pounds to get in.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem's father and mother will pay .... pounds to get in the museum.
   a. ten b. five c. twenty d. two
2. The Egyptian Museum is open ....
   a. weekly b. monthly c. yearly d. daily

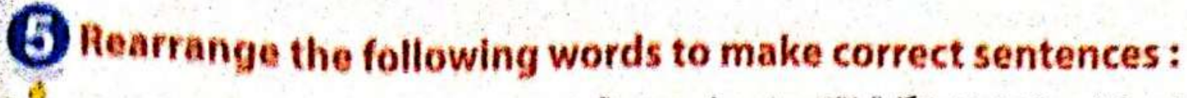
B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much does it cost for Kareem to get in the museum ?
   ....
4. What are the hours of the Egyptian Museum ?
   ....

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: اكتب فقرة انشائية من سبع جمل :

"The Egyptian Museum" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب - ٩٤

....
....
....
....
....
....
....



5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

اعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. cost - get in - **How much** - does - to - it ?

....

2. open - are - on - **We** - Sundays.

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences : ضع علامات الترقيم فى الجمل الآتية :

1. what are your hours

....

2. children under five are free

....



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالى

أهم الجمل التى وردت فى درس الـ (CONVERSATION TIME)

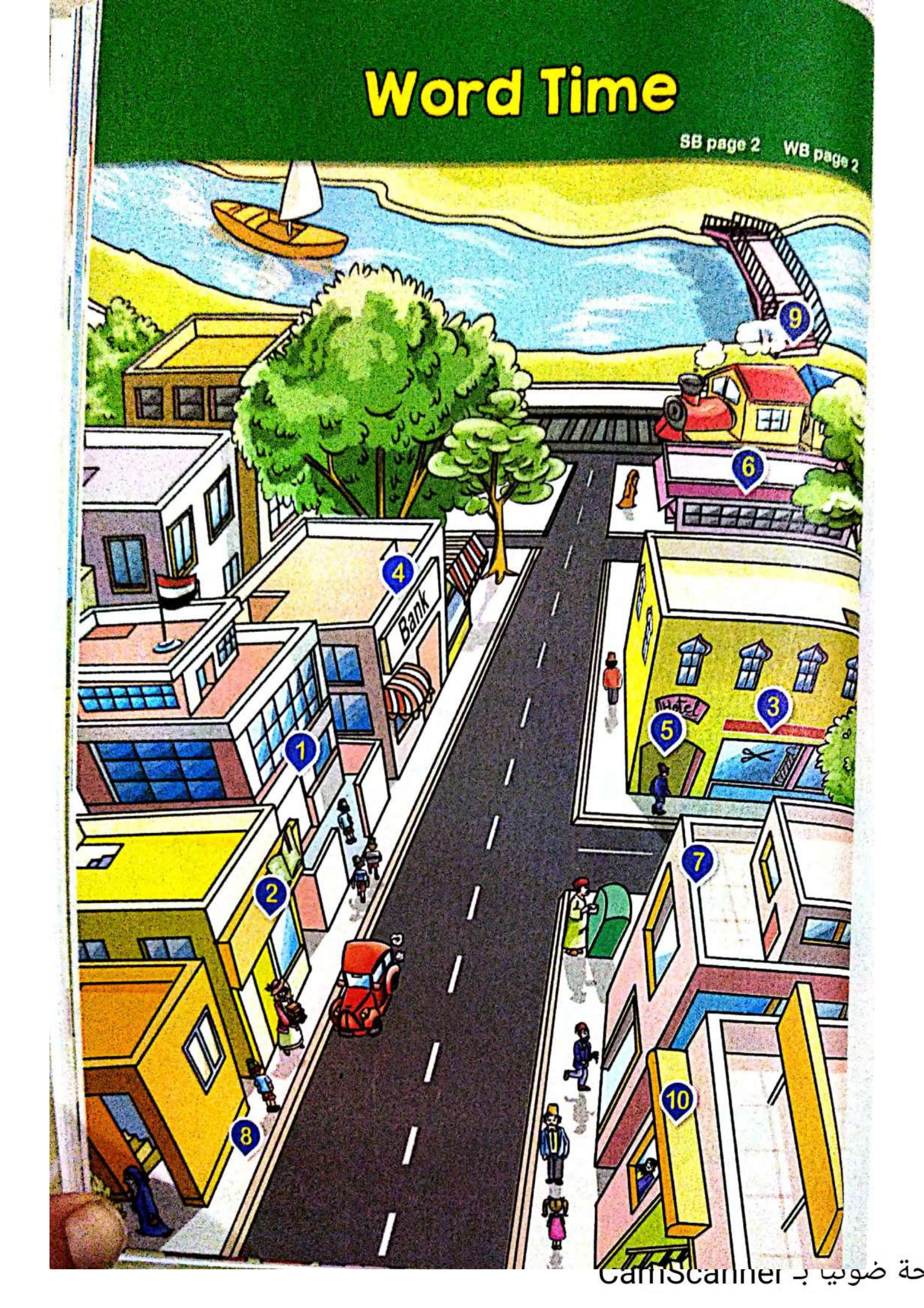
1. How can I help you ?
2. What are your hours ?
3. How much does it cost to get in ?
4. Children under five are free.
5. Does that include the Mummy rooms ?

Dictation

ثلاثة طرق لمعالجة اتقان المفردات اللغوية

- جزء قيــاس مــدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.
- Mo kids لعبة تقيس مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.
- Word Bank (أصنع كراسة مفرداتك اللغوية بنفسك).




Word Time
SB page 2 WB page 2
Bank
Hotel
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
CamScanner

(A) Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

Key Vocabulary **Public buildings & Structures**

الأبنية والمنشآت (الأماكن) العامة

1 school



مدرسة

2 library



مكتبة

3 barber's shop



صالون حلاقة

4 bank



بنك

5 hotel



فندق

6 train station



محطة قطار

7 post office



مكتب بريد

8 pavement



رصيف مشاه

9 bridge



كوبرى / جسر

10 theatre



مسرح



معاك Ma3ak App استمع

Vocabulary

need	يحتاج	daughter	ابنة
haircut	قصة شعر	heavy	ثقيل
show	عرض ترفيهي (مسرحي / سينمائي)	borrow	يستعير

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. Be careful.	١. كن حذرًا. (تستخدم للتحذير)
2. No problem.	٢. لا مشكلة.
3. Sure.	٣. بالتأكيد.

Places we go أماكن نذهب إليها

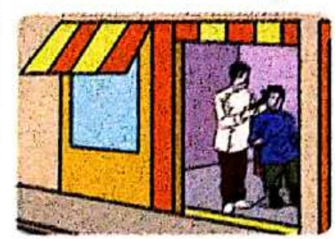
ex. I go to the (المكان)........ to (السبب للذهاب)........ .

school



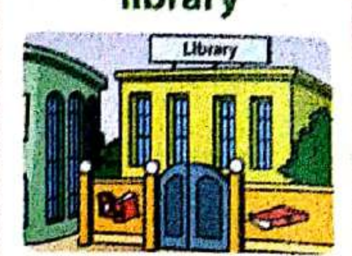
to learn
يتعلم

barber's shop



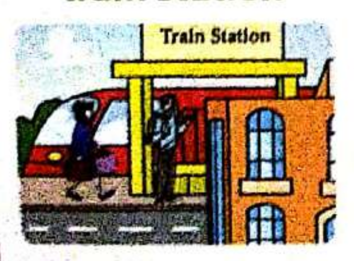
to get a haircut
يحصل على قصة شعر

library



to read / borrow books
يقرأ / يستعير كتب

train station



to take the train
يستقل القطار

theatre



to see the show
يشاهد العرض المسرحي

pavement

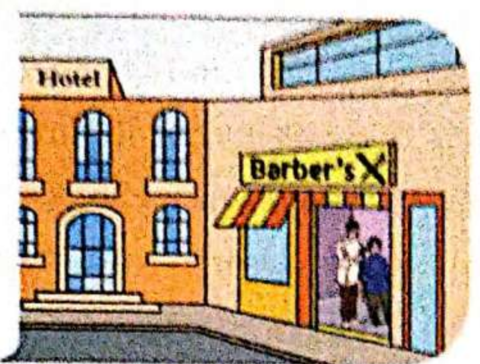


to walk on
يمشي (على الرصيف)

B Point and say the words. أشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر

Man : Are you open on Sundays ?
Barber : Yes. I`m open from 7:00 to 10:00.
Man : Good. I need a haircut.



Daughter : Dad, can we see the show ?
Father : Sure. How much does it cost to get in ?
Daughter : It's one pound for adults. Children are free.



Boy : Let me help you, Miss Sarah.
Woman: Thanks. Be careful. They're heavy.
Boy : No problem.



Language Functions

Offering help : تقديم المساعدة :

Let me help you, اسم الشخص.   دعنى اساعدك ، ....

- Let me help you, Miss Sarah.
- Thanks.



General Exercises on Word Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. father - mother - daughter - bridge (..................)
2. problem - get - borrow - walk (..................)
3. careful - nice - book - good (..................)
4. take - learn - read - train (..................)
5. bank - train station - hotel - taxi (..................)

(Alexandria - Agami 2020)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. .... does it cost for children ? (امتحان مجمع السويس ٢٠٢١)
   a. How much b. How long c. How many d. How tall
2. I went to the barber's shop to get a ....
   a. haircut b. money c. sandwich d. shoes
3. Soaad needs to go to the .... to get some money.
   a. post office b. school c. theatre d. bank

(امتحان مجمع الدقهلية ٢٠٢١)

4. We should walk .... the pavement.
   a. to b. for c. of d. on
5. SB Let .... help you, Miss Mona.
   a. I b. mine c. my d. me
6. You can borrow a book from the school ....
   a. train station b. library c. pavement d. hotel
7. This box is heavy, so I .... carry it.
   a. aren't b. isn't c. can't d. doesn't
8. I went to the .... to send a letter.
   a. library b. station c. bank d. post office

(Giza 2017 / امتحان مجمع كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢١)

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. see - Can - we - show - the ?

....

2. got - I - a haircut - the - at - barber's shop.

....

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: اكتب فقرة انشائية من سبع جمل :

"My school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ (WORD TIME)

library	مكتبة	train station	محطة قطار
barber's shop	صالون حلاقة	post office	مكتب بريد
bank	بنك	pavement	رصيف مشاة
hotel	فندق	bridge	كوبري / جسر
theatre	مسرح	school	مدرسة

Stop here!



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 3 & 4 WB pages 3 & 4

Focus Time



(A) Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



Prepositions of location حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

1 beside بجانب



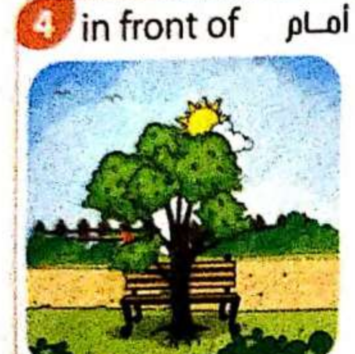
2 behind خلف



3 across from في الجهة المقابلة لـ (على الجانب الآخر من)



4 in front of أمام



5 near بالقرب من



6 above أعلى

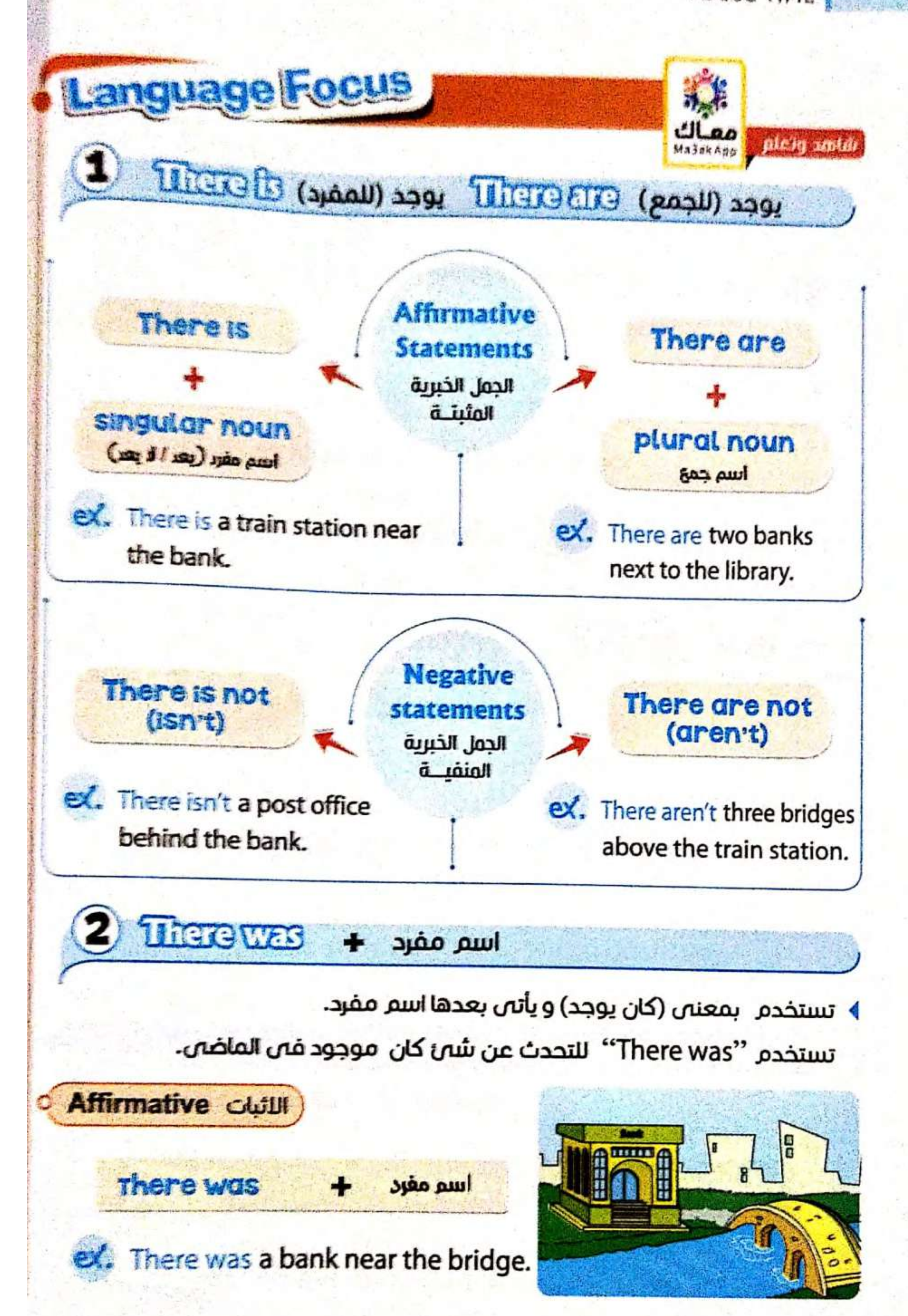


(B) Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Was there a library beside the post office ?

Yes, there was.





Language Focus

شاهد وتعلم

معاك Ma3ak App

1 There is يوجد (للمفرد) There are يوجد (للجمع)

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- **There is** + **singular noun** اسم مفرد (يعد / لا يعد)

ex. There is a train station near the bank.

- **There are** + **plural noun** اسم جمع

ex. There are two banks next to the library.

Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

- **There is not (isn't)**

ex. There isn't a post office behind the bank.

- **There are not (aren't)**

ex. There aren't three bridges above the train station.

2 There was + اسم مفرد

- تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) و يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد.

تستخدم "There was" للتحدث عن شئ كان موجود فى الماضى.

Affirmative الاثبات

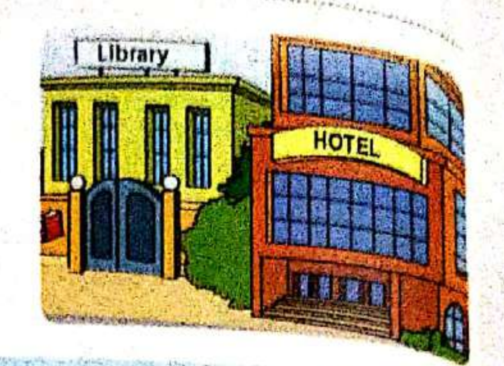
There was + اسم مفرد

ex. There was a bank near the bridge.



There wasn't + اسم مفرد

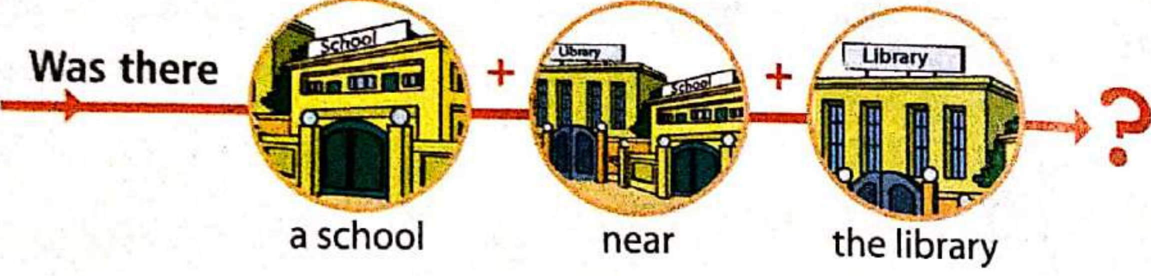
ex. There wasn't a school behind the hotel.



3 Was there ....?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الاسم المفرد بمعنى (هل كان يوجد .... ؟)

Was there → a/an place مكان + حرف جر خاص بالمكان + the place مكان ?



وللإجابة نستخدم

الاجابة المثبتة	الاجابة المنفية
	
Yes, there was.	No, there wasn't.

C Look at page (2). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة (٢) فى كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر.

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.



Exercise on Language Focus

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Was there a barber's shop .... front of the school ?
   a. from b. of c. in d. on

   (North Sinai 2014 - Souhag 2015)

2. Was .... a post office near the train station ?

   (امتحان مجمع القاهرة ٢٠٢١)

   a. there b. theirs c. their d. they

3. There was a library .... the hospital.
   a. across b. beside c. next d. front

4. The bank is .... to the post office. (امتحان مجمع دقهلية ٢٠٢١)
   a. next b. across c. in front d. between

5. There was a hotel .... the barber's shop.
   a. from b. in c. above d. under

6. Was there a hotel beside the school ? - Yes, there ....
   a. wasn't b. was c. weren't d. were

   (امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١)

7. Was there a library near the hospital ? - No, there ....

   (Alexandria 2020) (امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١)

   a. doesn't b. don't c. weren't d. wasn't

8. The chair is .... the desk.
   a. between b. behind c. across d. next

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. hotel - behind - <u>The</u> - is - bank - the. *(Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2019)*

   ....

2. <u>Was</u> - beside - the - post office - there - a school ?

   ....

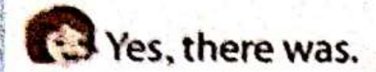
Practice Time

(A) Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner

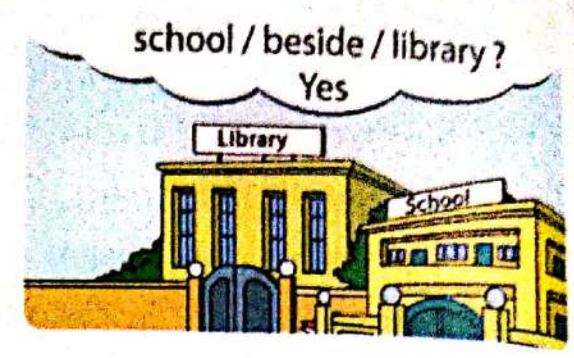
استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

Was there a bank near the school ? Yes, there was.

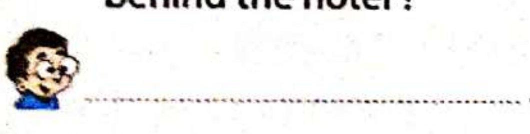
1. Was there a school beside the library ?



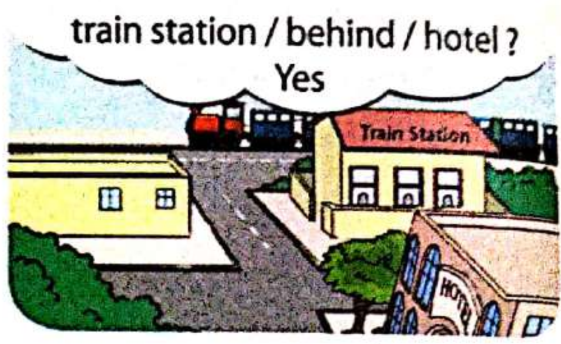
Yes, there was.



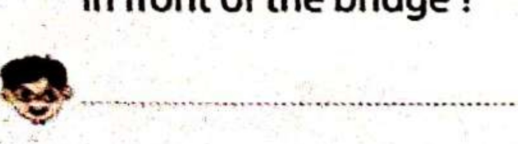
2. Was there a train station behind the hotel ?



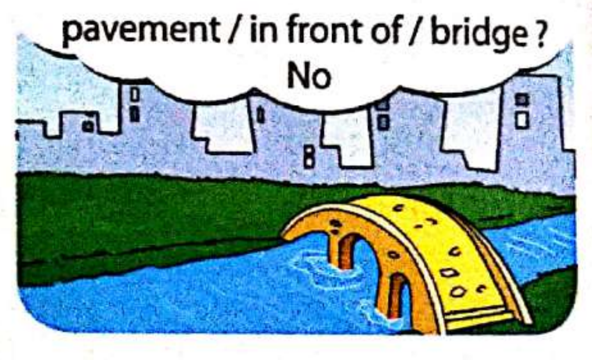
....



3. Was there a pavement in front of the bridge ?



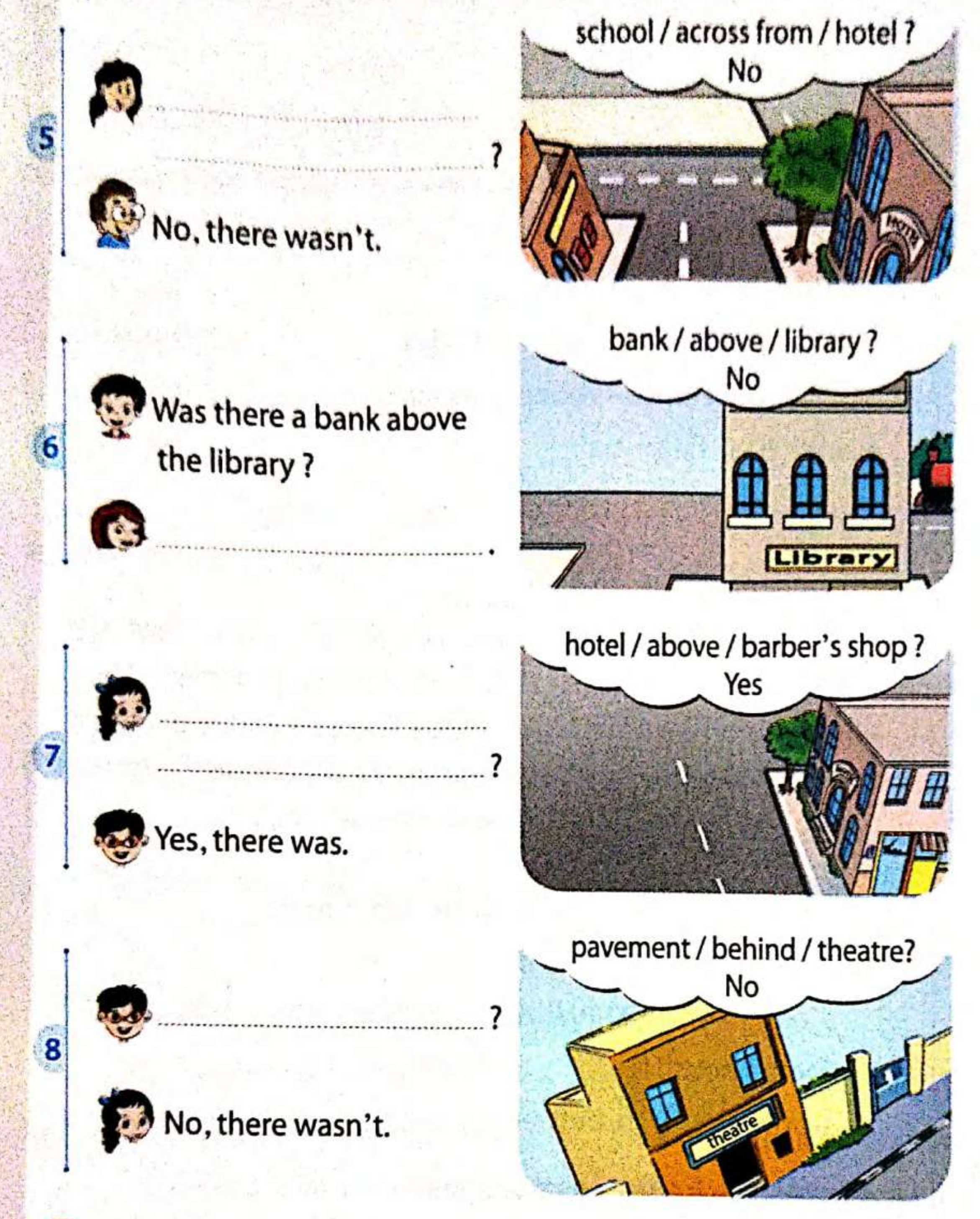
....



4. Was there a barber's shop near the post office ?

Yes, there was.





B Look at page (2). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (٢) فى كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. Where - When - is - What (....................)
2. include - near - in - between (....................)
3. Thursday - Monday - behind - Friday (....................)
4. school - post office - above - museum (....................)
5. plane - bus - near - train (....................)

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة واجب على الأسئلة :

My name is Sama. I'm in class six. I go to school on foot. My school is near my house. I always walk on the pavement. My school is across from the post office. There's a library in my school. I always read books in the library. It's beside the music room. There's a train station behind my school, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sama is .... years old.
   a. ten   b. twelve   c. six   d. eight
2. Sama's house is .... her school.
   a. above   b. between   c. far   d. near

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can Sama read books ?

....

4. Why does Sama go to school on foot ?

....

3 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

جواب حله في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونى من سبع جمل :

Write an email to your friend Ali to tell him about your school library. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. behind - hotel - Was - there - the - a school ?

....

2. post office - beside - There - the - a library - wasn't.

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

ضع علامات الترقيم فى الجمل الآتية :

1. was there a train station near Hager s house ?

....

2. no it wasn't.

....

Reading & Your Time

SB pages 5&6 WB pages 5&

Key Vocabulary

history	تاريخ	flavour	طعم / مذاق
churn	ممخضة (ماكينة آيس كريم)	a lot of	كثير من
cone	مخروط	invent	يخترع
dessert	حلو / الحلو (بعد الوجبات)	factory	مصنع
grocery store	محل بقالة كبير	vanilla	فانيليا

Notes

١. كلمة (history) المقصود بها السرد التاريخى لشئ معين. أما تاريخ يوم معين يسمى (date).

٢. يخترع invent (شئ لم يكن موجود من قبل).

Active Vocabulary

first	أول	chocolate	شيكولاتة
favourite	مفضل	tomato	طماطم
every	كل	pickle	مخلل
but	لكن	too	أيضًا / جداً
kind	نوع	cards	بطاقات/كوتشينة
long	طويل	Who ... ?	مَنْ ...؟
town	مدينة صغيرة		

Notes

١. تستخدم أداة الإستفهام (Who..?) للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل ويأتى الفعل بعدها مباشرة.

- Who invented the ice cream ?

٢. تستخدم كلمة (favourite) كصفة بمعنى مفضل ويأتى بعدها اسم وتستخدم كاسم بمعنى شئ مفضل وغالباً تأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

- What are your favourite flavours ?
- Vanilla and chocolate are my favourites.

New places & People

أماكن وأشخاص جدد

the United States of America (USA)	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	St. Louis	سانت لويس (مدينة امريكية)
America	أمريكا	Nancy Johnson	نانسي جونسون (اخترعت اول آلة يدوية لصناعة الآيس كريم)
New York	مدينة نيويورك	John Montagu	جون مونتاجو (مخترع الساندويتش)
Baltimore	بالتيمور (مدينة امريكية)		

Notes

١. يستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الأماكن الكبيرة كالمدن والبلاد وقبل السنوات والشهور

- in the United States - in 1851 - in May

٢. ويستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الأماكن الصغيرة.

- at every grocery store - at home

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى
invent	يخترع	invented		make	يصنع	made	
open	يفتح	opened		buy	يشترى	bought	
use	يستخدم	used		find	يجد	found	
call	يدعى / يسمى / يتصل	called		eat	ياكل	ate	
decide	يقرر	decided		know	يعرف	knew	

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. We don't know.	١. نحن لا نعرف.
2. get a haircut	٢. يحصل على قصة شعر
3. make a sandwich	٣. يصنع ساندوتشاً
4. play cards	٤. يلعب كوتشينة
5. one of	٥. واحد من
6. use for	٦. يستخدم لـ
7. kind of	٧. نوع من

Reading Time

Ice cream in America

SB page 5

Introduction : مقدمة

"Ice cream in America" is a passage about the history of ice cream in America and its different flavours.

"الآيس كريم في أمريكا" هي فقرة عن تاريخ الآيس كريم في أمريكا ونكهاته المختلفة.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn.
   ١. اخترعت نانسي جونسون أول مخضة (ماكينة لصناعة الآيس كريم) في عام ١٨٤٣.
2. In 1851, the first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore.
   ٢. تم افتتاح أول مصنع للآيس كريم في مدينة بالتيمور في عام ١٨٥١.
3. In 1896, a man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone.
   ٣. قام رجل من مدينة سانت لويس بصناعة أول مخروط للآيس كريم في عام ١٨٩٦.
4. In 1876, the first ice cream shop opened in New York.
   ٤. تم افتتاح أول محل آيس كريم في مدينة نيويورك في عام ١٨٧٦.
5. Ice cream has a lot of flavours.
   ٥. يوجد العديد من نكهات الآيس كريم.

A Listen and read along. استمع واقرأ

Ice Cream in America

Who invented[1] ice cream? We don't know, but ice cream has a long history[2] in the United States.

In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn[3]. The first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851. A man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone[4] in 1896. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite desserts[5].

Check Vocabulary

(1) اخترع
(2) تاريخ
(3) مكينة الآيس كريم
(4) مخروط
(5) الحلو

The first ice cream shop opened in New York in 1876. Now there is an ice cream shop in every town, and you can buy ice cream at every grocery store[6]. You can find a lot of flavours [7], from tomato to pickle[8]. America's favourite flavours are vanilla[9] and chocolate. What's your favourite ?

(6) محل بقالة كبير
(7) مذاق / نكهات
(8) مخلل
(9) فانيليا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can .... ice cream at every grocery store.
   a. read b. open c. make d. buy
2. SB My best .... is vanilla. *(Fayoum - Ista 2020)*
   a. size b. kind c. colour d. flavour
3. Ice cream has a long .... in the United States.
   a. maths b. science c. Arabic d. history
   (امتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)
4. You can have ice cream with different ....
   (امتحان مجمع بنى سويف ٢٠٢١)
   a. churns b. desserts c. flavours d. stores
5. SB Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream ....
   a. sandwich b. factory c. churn d. shop
6. A man in st. Louis made the first ice cream .... in 1896.
   a. star b. square c. circle d. cone
7. The first ice cream factory .... in Baltimore in 1851.
   a. opened b. made c. sold d. include
8. WB John Montagu .... the sandwich in 1750. *(Damietta 2019)*
   a. played b. went c. invented d. read

B Listen and circle True or False.

استمع وضع دائرة حول (True) أو (False).

1. We know who invented ice cream. True False
2. The first ice cream churn was invented in 1846. True False
3. The first ice cream shop opened in New York. True False
4. Americans don't like vanilla ice cream. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

اقرأ السؤال، واكتب الإجابة.

1. When did the first ice cream shop open ?
   The first ice cream shop opened in 1876.
2. Who invented the first ice cream churn ?
   ....
3. Where did the first ice cream factory open ?
   ....
4. What flavours are America's favourites ?
   America's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.

The Sandwich

WB page 5

Introduction : مقدمة

"The Sandwich" is a passage about the history of the sandwich.

"الساندوتش" هي فقرة عن تاريخ الساندوتش.

Add to your information : أضف إلى معلوماتك

One night, John Montagu was very hungry, but he was too busy playing cards to stop for a meal. So he ordered a waiter to bring him meat between two slices of bread.



ذات ليلة، كان جون مونتاجو جائعًا جدًا ولكنه كان مشغولاً جدًا بلعب الكوتشينة لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع أن يتوقف عن اللعب من أجل تناول وجبة طعام لذلك طلب من الجرسون أن يحضر له لحم بين شريحتين من الخبز. (ومن هنا جاءت فكرة الساندوتش)

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. In 1750, John Montagu invented the sandwich.

١. اخترع جون مونتاجو الساندوتش عام ١٧٥٠.

2. The sandwich is now one of America's favourite foods.

٢. يعد الآن الساندوتش واحدًا من الأطعمة المفضلة فى أمريكا.

اقرأ النص فى صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Is there a library near your house ?

....

2. Is there a library near your school ?

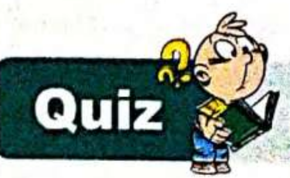
....

3. Is there a theatre beside your house ?

....

4. Is there a bank across from your school ?

....



اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات

B Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d.

1. .... invented ice cream ?
   a. What   b. When   c. Who   d. Where
2. Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?
   a. open   b. opened   c. opening   d. opens
3. You can find a lot .... favourite flavours.
   a. of   b. on   c. at   d. in
4. My best .... is vanilla.
   a. flavour   b. kind   c. colour   d. size
5. **A :** Where can you borrow books ? **B :** From ....
   a. library   b. hotel   c. train station   d. theatre

C Review. Read and write the answers.

راجع .اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you like going to museums ?

....

....

2. Is there a bookshop beside your school ?

....

....

3. How do you go to school ?

....

....

4. Where do you get a haircut ?

....

....



General Exercises Reading & Your Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The first ice cream .... opened in New York.
   a. shop b. hotel c. water d. juice
2. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite ....
   (امتحان مجمع الجيزة ٢٠٢١)
   a. drinks b. desserts c. deserts d. food
3. America's favourite .... are vanilla and chocolate.
   (امتحان مجمع المنوفية ٢٠٢١)
   a. ice cream b. factories c. desserts d. flavours
4. Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?
   a. opened b. open c. opens d. opening
5. You can buy ice cream .... every shop. (امتحان مجمع الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢١)
   a. on b. at c. of d. by
6. The fisrt ice cream shop opened .... 1876.
   a. in b. on c. at d. by
7. Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream ....
   (امتحان مجمع الغربية ٢٠٢١)
   a. barn b. park c. churn d. basket
8. .... invented ice cream ? *(Cairo - Ain Shams 2018 / Sharkia - Souhag 2017)*
   a. When b. What c. Where d. Who

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. vanilla - cooked - opened - invented (..............)
2. New York - United States - on - Baltimore (..............)
3. store - factory - pickle - shop (..............)
4. ice cream - museum - sandwich - cake (..............)
5. How - What - Where - often (..............)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة واجب على الأسئلة :

Hi! I'm Ali. I own أمتلك an ice cream sandwich shop. It's called Cold Sandwiches. In 2011, I bought my first ice cream churn. I made ice cream at home. Then, in 2012, I bought an ice cream shop.

I use all kinds of ice cream, from chocolate and strawberry to banana. Come over to Cold Sandwiches and buy your favourite ice cream sandwich.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In 2012, Ali .... an ice cream shop.
   a. bought b. called c. used d. made
2. You can .... ice cream sandwiches at Ali's shop.
   a. sell b. use c. buy d. own

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Ali buy his first ice cream churn ?
   ....
4. Who is the owner صاحب/ مالك of Cold Sandwiches ?
   ....

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

إجابة هذا في نهاية الكتاب

Write an email to your friend Mona. Tell her about the ice cream history. Your name is Fatma. Your email address is fatma@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mona@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

(Sharkia - Menia El-Kamh 2018)

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. invented - Who - cream - ice ? *(Cairo 2017)*
   ....
2. ice cream - buy - You - everywhere - can. *(Luxor 2020)*
   ....



How to write

كيف تكتب



Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تمهيد الطالب للكتابة

1. Was there a library beside the post office ?
   - Yes, there was.
2. Was there a pavement in front of the bridge ?
   - No, there wasn't.

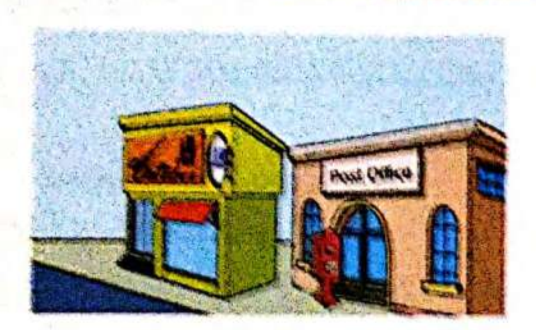
Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدريب على المفردات اللغوية

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة

bridge - barber's shop - hotel



1. Was there a .... near the post office?
   – Yes, there was.



2. Was there a .... beside the train station?
   – Yes, there was.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدريب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• **Choose and write the word :**

there was - above - wasn't

1. Was there a school beside the library ?
   - Yes, ...
2. Was there a bank .... the library ?
   - No, there wasn't.

Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة: شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها

• **Choose and complete the idea web.**

beside - hotel - next - front

There was

1. a .... behind the post office.
2. a bridge .... to the Nile.
3. a school .... the hotel.
4. a pavement in .... of the bridge.

Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• **Read, cut and stick.**

"The Egyptian Museum"

Cut & Paste here from page 293

"My favourite flavour of ice cream"

Cut & Paste here from page 293

Writing checklist

1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
2. My sentences end with a full stop.
3. My words are in the correct order.



تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. are – **We** – daily – open.

2. invented – churn – **Nancy Johnson** – Ice cream – the first.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. your – **Number** – papers – to five – from one.

2. book – **Don't** – your – close.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. get in – **How much** – to – cost – does – it ?

2. did – **When** – shop – open – the ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2			the shop		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. that – **Does** – Mummy – the – rooms – include ?

2. show – **Can** – see – the – we ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				



Test your skills

Unit 1

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قيم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد
راجع الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.
Listen and tick (✓).

استمع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة التالية. استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. What are your hours ?
   - ◯ We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.
   - ◯ Yes. We're open daily.

2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

2. Which word is correct ?

   There .... a train station near the bank.
   - ◯ are
   - ◯ is

3 Writing skill

3. Write two sentences about the Egyptian Museum.

اكتب جملتين عن المتحف المصري.

....

....

My Spelling Test

Look and write.

1. ....

2. ....

3. ....

4. ....



Review on Unit 1

مراجعة على Unit 1 فى ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation

Receptionist : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you ?

Kareem : Hi! What are your hours ?

Receptionist : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.

Kareem : Are you open on Fridays ?

Receptionist : Yes. We're open daily.

Kareem : How much does it cost to get in ?

Receptionist : It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free.

Kareem : Does that include the Mummy rooms ?

Receptionist : No, it doesn't.

Kareem : Thanks for your help.

Receptionist : You're welcome. Have a nice day.

2. Vocabulary

barber's shop	صالون حلاقة
hotel	فندق
post office	مكتب بريد
train station	محطة القطار
pavement	رصيف مشاة
bridge	كوبرى
theatre	مسرح
library	مكتبة
bank	بنك
school	مدرسة

3. Language Focus

1- Prepositions of places :
حروف جر خاصة بالمكان

beside	بجانب / بجوار
across from	فى الجهة المقابلة
in front of	أمام
near	بالقرب من
above	فوق / أعلى
behind	خلف

2- Was there ... ?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الاسم المفرد بمعنى «هل كان يوجد ...؟»

وللاجابة المختصرة نستخدم :

اجابة مختصرة مثبتة

- Yes, there was.

اجابة مختصرة منفية

- No, there wasn't.

Workbook On Conversation Time page 1

A. Read and circle. اقرأ وضع دائرة

1.
Good	night. / morning. / day.	the / Egyptian	Marker. / Mountain. / Museum.	How	will / can / could	I	helped / helping / help	you ?

2.
Hi!	What / Why / Where	are	its / your / his	hours ?

3.
Where / Were / We're	open	four / for / from	9:00	to / two / too	7:00.

4.
Are / Own / Our	you open	on / for / in	Fridays ?

5.
Yes. We're open	day. / dance. / daily.

6.
How	many / much / money	does it cost to	get out ? / get in ? / get one ?

7.
It's five pounds for	animals / apples / adults	and two pounds for	child. / children. / chimps.

B. Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.

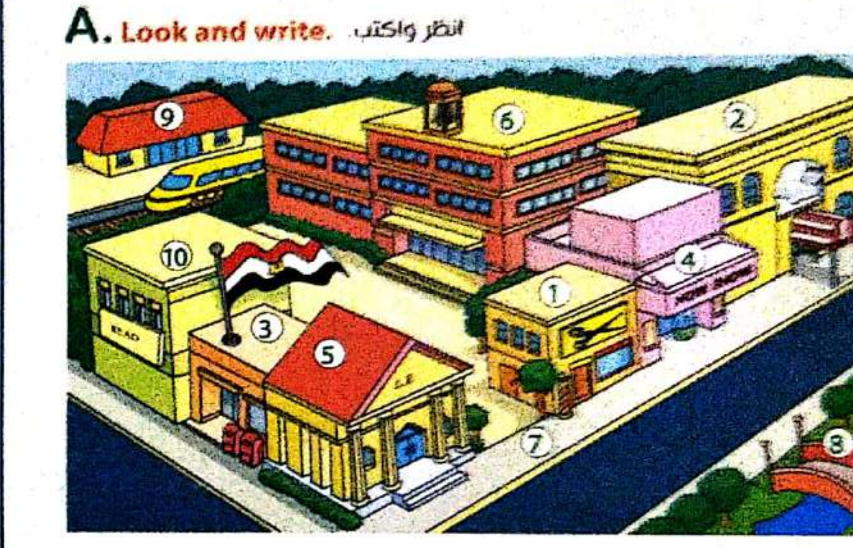
- Cairo Film Theatre
- Adults: L.E 5.00
- Children: L.E 2.00
- Open: Saturday to Friday

1. How much does it cost for children ?
2. Is it open on Sundays ?
3. How much does it cost for adults ?

Workbook On Word Time page 2

UNIT 1

A. Look and write. انظر واكتب



1. barber's shop
2. hotel
3. post office
4. theatre
5. bank
6. school
7. pavement
8. bridge
9. train station
10. library

B. Where were they ? Look at A and write. أين كانوا ؟ انظر إلى (A) واكتب.

1. He was at the barber's shop.
2. She was at the hotel.
3. They were at post office.
4. He was at the theatre.

A. Look and write. انظر واكتب.













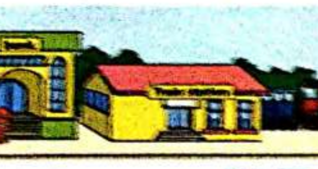




1 beside
2
3
4
5 above
6

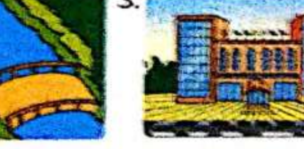
B. Read and circle True or False. اقرأ وضع دائرة حول True أو False.





1. There's a train station near the bank. True False
2. There's a barber's shop beside the library. (True) False
3. There's a post office behind the bank. True False

C. Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.





1. Was there a school across from the theatre ? ....
2. Was there a bridge above the barber's shop ? ....
3. Was there a pavement in front of the hotel ? ....

A. Read and write. اقرأ واكتب.

Was there a restaurant across from the bakery?
Yes, there was.

Was there a library beside the hospital?
Yes, there was.

Was there a barber's shop above the museum?
No, ...

B. Write the questions and answers. اكتب الأسئلة والإجابات.

1. bridge / above / train station ?
   Was there a bridge above the train station ?
   No, there wasn't.
2. hotel / near / post office ?
   ....
   ....
3. barber's shop / behind / hotel ?
   ....
   ....

Workbook On Reading Time page 5

A. Read. اقرأ

The Sandwich

The sandwich has a long history. In 1750, John Montagu invented the sandwich. He used bread and meat for the first sandwich. He liked to eat a sandwich and play cards.
The sandwich is now one of America's favourite foods.

In the United States there is a sandwich shop in every town, and you can buy sandwiches at every grocery store. You can make a sandwich at home, too!

B. Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.

1. When did John Montagu invent the sandwich?
2. Where can you buy sandwiches in the United States?
3. Is the sandwich one of America's favourite foods?
4. What did John Montagu use for the first sandwich?

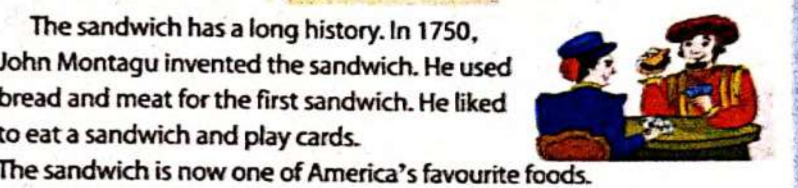
C. Write and draw. ارسم السندوتش المفضل لديك واكتب.

My favourite sandwich has cheese and meat in it.
What's your favourite kind of sandwich?

Workbook On Your Time page 6

A. Look at the map. Answer the questions.

انظر إلى الخريطة. وأجب على الأسئلة



1. Is the cinema beside your house?
2. How much does it cost for children?
3. Is the museum near your house?
4. When does it open?

B. Draw an old town. ارسم مدينة قديمة

Include a school, library, barber's shop, bank, hotel, post office, and pavement. Write six sentences.

ارسم مدينة قديمة (اجعلها تحتوي على مدرسة، مكتبة، صالون حلاقة، بنك، فندق، مكتب بريد ورصيف). اكتب ست جمل.

Answers will vary.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.



1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :
(القاهرة - الوايلى ٢٠١٨ - امتحان مجمع القليوبية - عبور ٢٠٢١)

daily	يوميًا	theatre	مسرح
pound	جنيه	pavement	رصيف
Mummy rooms	حجرات المومياوات	bridge	كوبرى
school	مدرسة	cone	مخروط
library	مكتبة	churn	ممخضة (ماكينة آيس كريم)
barber's shop	محل حلاقة	flavour	طعم / مذاق
post office	مكتب بريد	grocery store	محل بقالة كبير

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :
(الجيزة -عمرانية ٢٠١٩ - امتحان مجمع كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠٢١)

1. There is (1) a train station near (2) the bank.
2. There wasn't (3) a school behind the hotel.
3. Was (4) there a school near the library ?

Check Language

(1)	يوجد (للمفرد) في زمن المضارع
(2)	حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان بمعنى بالقرب من
(3)	لا يوجد (للمفرد) «النفي في الماضي»
(4)	صيغة الاستفهام بهل.. ؟ مع فعل يكون في الماضي

3. Language functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :
(الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠١٧)

Questions	Answers
• What are your hours ?	- We're open from 9 : 00 to 7 : 00.
• Are you open on Fridays ?	- Yes. We're open daily.
• How much does it cost ?	- It's two pounds.
• Does that include the Mummy rooms ?	- No, it doesn't.

Test 1 on Unit 1

• Understand • Apply • Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات



A Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. I go to the Egyptian Museum.
   b. It`s the Egyptian Museum.
2. a. Nineteen pounds. *(Giza 2015)*
   b. Ninety pounds.
3. a. Who invented the first telephone ?
   b. Who invented the first ice cream churn ? *(Luxor 2017 - Fayoum 2017)*
4. a. When did the first ice cream shop open ?
   b. Where did the first ice cream factory open ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Adel : Is there a theatre near your house ?
Ali : No, there isn't. There is a (1) ....
Adel : (2) .... are its hours ?
Ali : It's open from 9:00 to 7:00 .
Adel : How much does it (3) .... to get in ?
Ali : It's five (4) ....

(Cairo 2016 / Assiut 2017 / Giza - Al-Omraneyah 2019)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Pupils go to the .... to enjoy reading books. *(Cairo - Al Sahel 2020)*
   a. cinema b. museum c. library d. theatre
2. In the museum, children under five can get in for .... They don't pay money.
   a. cost b. fine c. food d. free
   (امتحان مجمع المنوفية – قويسنا ٢٠٢١)
3. My best ice cream .... is vanilla. (امتحان مجمع أسوان – ادفو ٢٠٢١)
   a. class b. number c. colour d. flavour
4. Was there a school across from the theatre ? No, there ....
   (امتحان مجمع قنا – نجع حمادي ٢٠٢١)
   a. aren't b. isn't c. wasn't d. weren't

5. Ice cream has a .... history. (امتحان مجمع القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢١)
a. long b. bad c. hungry d. big

6. .... a nice weekend, Ashraf. (امتحان مجمع الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢١)
a. Have b. Has c. Having d. Had

7. We are .... daily except on holidays. (امتحان مجمع البحيرة - دمنهور ٢٠٢١)
a. open b. opened c. opens d. opening

8. .... invented the first ice cream churn ? - Nancy Johnson. (امتحان مجمع المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢١)
a. What b. When c. Who d. Where

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. theatre - cinema - play - museum *(Fayoum - Tamia 2020)* (..................)
2. of - between - on - March *(Menia 2020)* (..................)
3. Tuesday - April - May - August *(Suez 2018)* (..................)
4. eat - help - ice cream - walk *(Ismailia 2014)* (..................)
5. post office - hotel - May - bank *(Beheira 2017)* (..................)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Last week, Hoda and her father went to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. It is open daily from 9:00 to 7:00. It's not expensive to get in. It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free. It is a nice place. They will go there again and again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hoda went to the .... with her father.
a. bank b. theatre
c. cinema d. Egyptian Museum

2. The Egyptian Museum is a .... place.
a. bad b. sad c. nice d. hard

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much does it cost for foreigners to get in ? *(Qena 2017)*

....

4. When is the Egyptian Museum open ?

....

C Writing

يجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :
اكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى من سبع جمل :

Write an email to your friend Mohamed to tell him about the dessert you ate. Your name is Mazen. Your email address is mazen@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mohamed@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Souhag 2018)

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. invent - **When** - the - did - John - sandwich ?

(Beni Suef - Samesta 2020)

....

2. best - is - vanilla - **My** - flavour.

(Qena 2020)

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences :
ضع علامات الترقيم فى الجمل الآتية :

1. when did the first ice cream shop open

(South Sinai 2015)

....

2. In 1843, nancy johnson invented the first ice cream churn.

....

(Dakahlia 2015)



Test 2 on Unit 1

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. We're open from 9:00 to 6:00.
   b. We're open from 10:00 to 8:00.
2. a. At the library.
   b. At the barber's shop.
3. a. Were you open on Fridays ?
   b. Are you open on Fridays ?
4. a. What flavours are your favourite ?
   b. What flavours are America's favourite ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Ahmed : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum.
How can I help you ?
Sherif : Hi! What are your (1) .... ?
Ahmed : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.
Sherif : Are you open on (2) .... ?
Ahmed : Yes, we're open (3) ....
Sherif : Thank you for your (4) ....

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. There was a barber's shop .... our house.
   a. front b. across c. next d. beside
2. SB .... that include the Mummy rooms ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Do d. Does
3. SB Are you open .... Fridays ?
   a. at b. on c. in d. with

4. What did John Montagu use .... the first sandwich ?
   a. of   b. about   c. for   d. with
5. How much does it cost to .... in ?
   a. do   b. get   c. work   d. go
6. Pupils can borrow books from the school ....
   a. cinema   b. stadium   c. library   d. museum
7. Do you like going to the .... to see the Mummy rooms ?
   a. factory   b. school   c. museum   d. park
8. They went to the .... to see a show.
   a. theatre   b. bank   c. school   d. home

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. next to - behind - between - hotel (...............)
2. vanilla - open - help - cost (...............)
3. bookshop - next to - post office - library (...............)
4. invented - made - opened - walk (...............)
5. Why - pavement - What - How (...............)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة وأجب على الأسئلة :

The sandwich is very famous in America. It was invented by an American man. He liked to eat a sandwich and play cards. It's now one of America's favourite foods. There's a sandwich shop in every town. You can make a sandwich at home, too!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sandwich was invented by a / an .... man.
   a. Italian   b. French   c. American   d. Egyptian
2. He liked to eat a sandwich and .... cards.
   a. help   b. have   c. play   d. make

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is the sandwich one of America's favourite food ?

....

4. Where can you make a sandwich ?

....

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: اكتب فقرة مكونة من سبع جمل :

"Your visit to the Egyptian Museum" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. me - Let - you - help.

....

2. cost - How - it - much - does ?

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences : ضع علامات الترقيم فى الجمل الآتية :

1. can we see the show

....

2. there wasn't a train station behind the hospital

....



Stop here!

1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف



1 Read and circle:

1. Does that include the Mummy rooms?

   a. No, it doesn't. b. No, it isn't.

2. What are your hours?

   a. Yes. We're open daily. b. We're open from 9:00 to 7:00

3. The train station is behind the hospital.

   a. Why do you go to the train station?

   b. Where is the train station?

4. I'm going to the Egyptian Museum.

   a. Where are you going? b. What are you reading?

2 Punctuate the following sentence:

john montagu invented the sandwich

....

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

- Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. all - children - **Are** - free - under - five ?

....

2. know - **We** - invented - who - the sandwich.

....

UNIT 2

In the Restaurant

في المطعم



* العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
* العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
* نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- order food in a restaurant

– طلب طعام في المطعم

- express quantities of food & drink

– التعبير عن كميات الطعام والمشروبات

- identify speakers in a conversation

– التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a restaurant review – قراءة مقال عن مطعم

Vocabulary

- food and drink – تعلم مفردات عن الأطعمة والمشروبات

Grammar

- food quantities – كيفية التعبير عن كميات الطعام

- Wh-questions with how much /many

– السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام «كم» (للكمية وللعدد)

لإتقان الوحدة :

• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.
• Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.
• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

Conversation Time

SB page 7 WB page 1

Key Vocabulary

ready	جاهز / مستعد	well done	مطهي جيدًا
order	يطلب / يأمر	mood	حالة مزاجية
rare	غير تام الطهي	today's special	طبق اليوم (المميز)
medium	متوسط الطهي	restaurant	مطعم

Notes

1. ready to + inf. مصدر الفعل — ١. جاهز / مستعد لـ ...
   - I'm ready to go.
2. order — ٢. تستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يطلب) واسم بمعنى (طلب)
   - He ordered fish.
   - I want my order well done.

٣. حرفي (ci) في كلمة (special) ينطقان /ʃ/ مثل صوت حرف (ش) في اللغة العربية

Active Vocabulary

have	يتناول / يمتلك	maybe	ربما
waitress	جرسونة	menu	قائمة طعام
waiter	جرسون	salad	سلطة
soup	شوربة	delicious	لذيذ / شهي
steak	شريحة لحم بقري (بفتيك)	Sounds good.	يبدو جيدًا.
baked potato	بطاطس مخبوزة في الفرن (بطاطس مشوية بقشرها)	spaghetti and meatballs	مكرونة اسباجتي بقطع اللحم

Notes

١. تستخدم مع الأشياء بمعنى يمتلك.

1. have
   - I have a pen.
   - I have spaghetti and meatballs. — أما مع الأطعمة والمشروبات بمعنى يتناول.

٢. تستخدم هذه الأفعال قبل الصفة بمعنى يبدو.

2. look / sound + صفة
   - It looks delicious. - It sounds good.

٣. حرف (h) في كلمة (spaghetti) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي		Present مضارع		Past ماضي
order	يطلب	ordered		think	يعتقد	thought
look	يبدو / ينظر	looked		have	يمتلك / يتناول	had

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

1. one - four - soup - five (..........)
2. think - well done - order - bake (..........)
3. menu - delicious - rare - special (..........)
4. water - spaghetti - steak - meatballs *(Qena 2018)* (..........)
5. museum - have - school - restaurant (..........)

In the Restaurant في المطعم

- **Characters** شخصيات المحادثة



woman
سيدة



waitress جرسونة



man رجل

- **Topic** موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is in a restaurant. A man and a woman are hungry and ordering the waitress to bring them some good food.

محادثة اليوم في مطعم . رجل وسيدة يشعران بالجوع ويطلبان من الجرسونة أن تحضر لهم بعض الطعام الجيد.

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.





Waitress : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Woman : I think so. I'll have a steak.

الجرسونة : أهلًا وسهلًا (بكم). هل أنتم جاهزون لطلب الطعام ؟ .

السيدة : أعتقد ذلك. سأتناول شريحة لحم بقرى.

Waitress : Rare, medium, or well done ? **Woman** : Medium, please. And a baked potato.	النادلة : نيئ أم متوسط الطهي أم جيد الطهي ؟ المرأة : متوسط الطهي من فضلك وبطاطس مخبوزة بالفرن.
Waitress : How about a salad ? **Woman** : Sounds good.	النادلة : ما رأيك في طبق سلطة ؟ المرأة : يبدو جيداً.
Man : What's today's special ? **Waitress** : Spaghetti and meatballs.	الرجل : ما هو طبق اليوم المميز ؟ النادلة : مكرونة اسباجتي بكفتة اللحم.
Man : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.	الرجل : جميل! لدي رغبة في تناول المكرونة (اسباجتي). سأتناول ذلك.
Waitress : Here you are. **Man** : Thanks. It looks delicious.	النادلة : تفضل (إليك ما طلبت). الرجل : شكراً، إنه يبدو لذيذ الطعم.

Language Functions



1

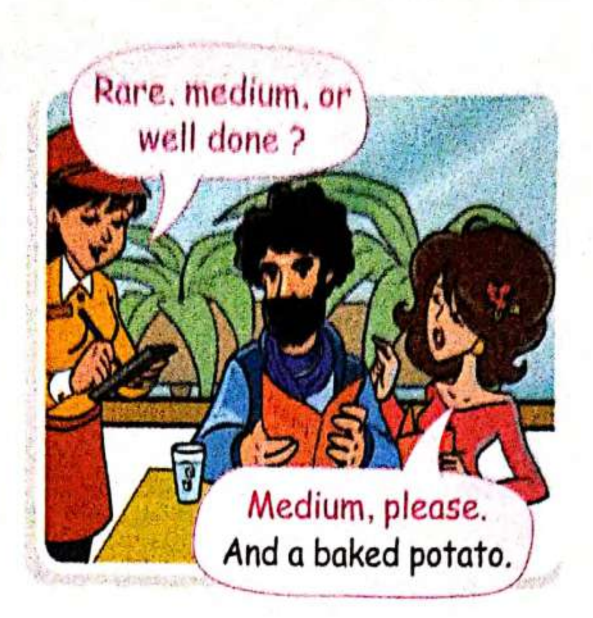
• عند سؤال شخص ما عما إذا كان مستعداً لعمل شيء نستخدم :

- **Are you ready to ...... ?**

= هل أنت مستعد لـ ...... ؟

• للتعبير عن الموافقة نستخدم :

- **I think so.** = أعتقد ذلك.



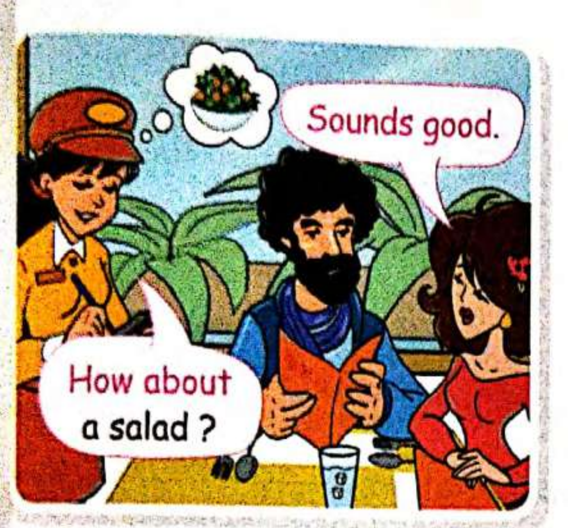
2

• عند السؤال عن درجة الطهى نستخدم :

- Rare, medium, or well done ?

• وللرد نستخدم :

- Rare / Well done / Medium, please.



3

• عند السؤال عن الرأى نستخدم :

- How about (noun اسم) / (inf. + ing)?

- ماذا عن ... ؟

- How about a salad ?

• وللرد باستحسان الرأى نستخدم :

- Sounds good. - يبدو جيدًا.



4

• عند السؤال عن طبق اليوم (الخاص) الذى يقدمه المطعم نستخدم :

- What's today's special ?

- ما هو طبق اليوم (المميز) ؟

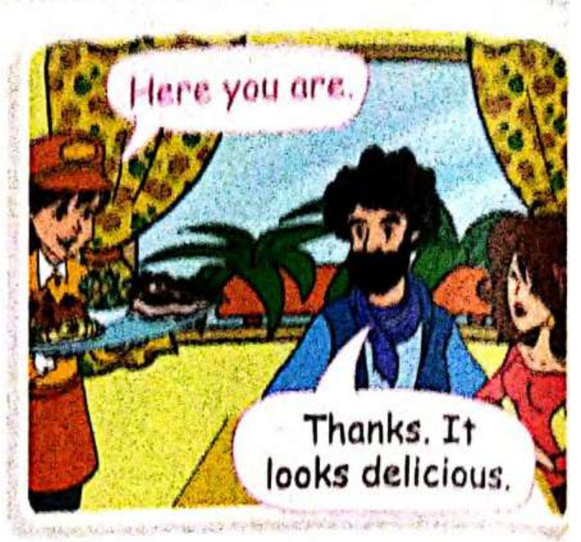
5

- للتعبير عن الموافقة على العرض نستخدم :
- حسنًا / جيدًا	- Good !
- للتعبير عن الرغبة فى شئ معين نستخدم :
- I'm in the mood for ...
- لدى رغبة فى ...



6

- عند تقديم شىء لشخص ما نستخدم :
- تفضل.	- Here you are.
- وللرد نستخدم :
- شكرًا.	- Thanks.



Exercise on Language Functions

- **Listen and complete :** استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل	نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

Waiter : Hello! Are you ready to order ?
Mona : I think so. I'll have a steak and a (1) .... potato.
Waiter : Rare, medium or (2) .... done ?
Mona : Medium, please.
Waiter : How (3) .... a salad ?
Mona : (4) .... good.

(Alexandria 2017 / Sharkia - Mashtool Elsouq 2019) (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.



General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand • Apply • Create



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى المحادثة وضع دائرة

1. a. Sounds good.
   b. Here you are. *(Giza 2014)*
2. a. Spaghetti and meatballs.
   b. Pizza and salad. *(Souhag 2017)*
3. a. What will you have ?
   b. What's today's special ? *(Souhag - Tema 2018)*
4. a. What will the man have ?
   b. What will the woman have ?

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... in the mood for rice. *(Cairo 2016 - Fayoum 2020)*
   a. 'm b. will c. have d. can
2. I'm in the .... for meatballs for lunch. *(Qalyoubia - Benha 2020)*
   a. sound b. mood c. way d. smell
3. We're going to eat dinner at a .... *(Qena - Deshna 2020)*
   a. school b. theatre c. bank d. restaurant
4. I'm ready .... *(Port Said 2015 / Fayoum 2016-2017 / Old Cairo 2020)*
   a. order b. ordering c. to order d. ordered
5. That meal وجبة .... very delicious. *(Matrouh 2014)*
   a. look b. looks c. looking d. to look
6. At restaurants, you can choose food from a ....
   a. menu b. table c. shop d. pot
   (Assiut - Manfalout 2018)
7. Are you .... to order, sir ? (امتحان مجمع الشرقية – أبو كبير ٢٠٢١)
   a. happy b. sad c. bad d. ready
8. Does she .... a baked potato ? *(Cairo 2016 / Fayoum 2016)*
   a. want b. wants c. wanted d. wanting

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last week, my friend and I walked to a restaurant. The restaurant was clean and the food smelled good. When we reached there, the waiter came and asked what we wanted to eat and drink. Ahmed ordered fish and rice. I ordered spaghetti and meatballs. Then, we asked the waiter to bring us orange juice. We returned home at five o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The restaurant was ....

a. dirty b. busy c. clean d. small

2. They went to the restaurant ....

a. on foot b. by car c. by train d. by bus

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did they go to the restaurant ?

....

4. What did they drink ?

....

(Dakahlia 2015)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **My** - is - ready - to - order - brother. *(Dakahlia - Manzala 2020)*

....

2. special - **What's** - today's ?

(South Sinai 2015 / Cairo - Road El Farag 2019 / Gharbia - Santa 2020)

....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"In the restaurant" يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

(Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)

1. I ll have a steak, please

....

2. good ! i am in the mood for spaghetti. *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....

Spotlight

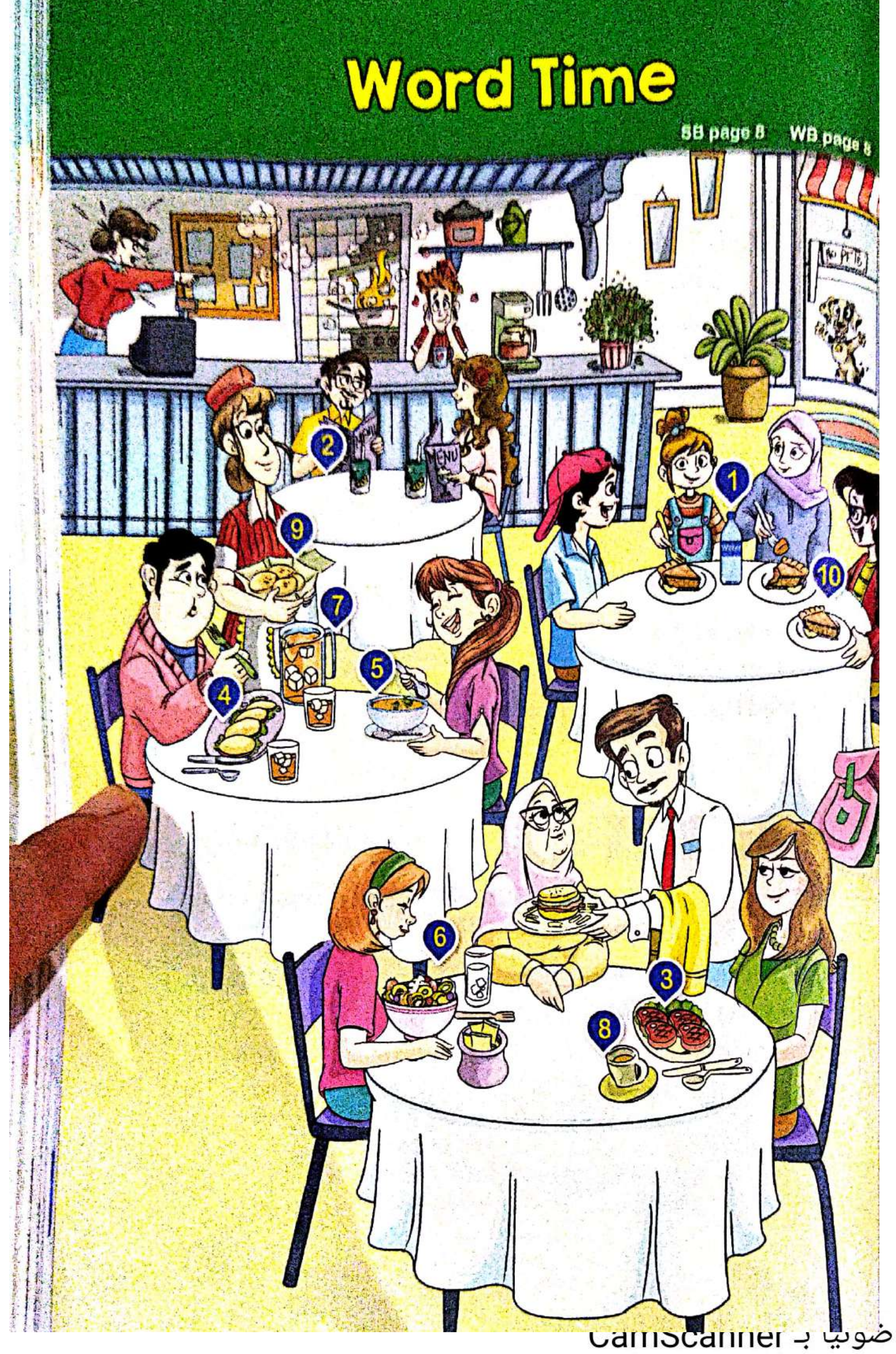
راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالى

أهم الجمل التى وردت فى درس الـ (CONVERSATION TIME)

1. Are you ready to order ?
2. Rare, medium or well done ?
3. How about a salad ?
4. What's today's special ?
5. I'm in the mood for spaghetti.

تنويه

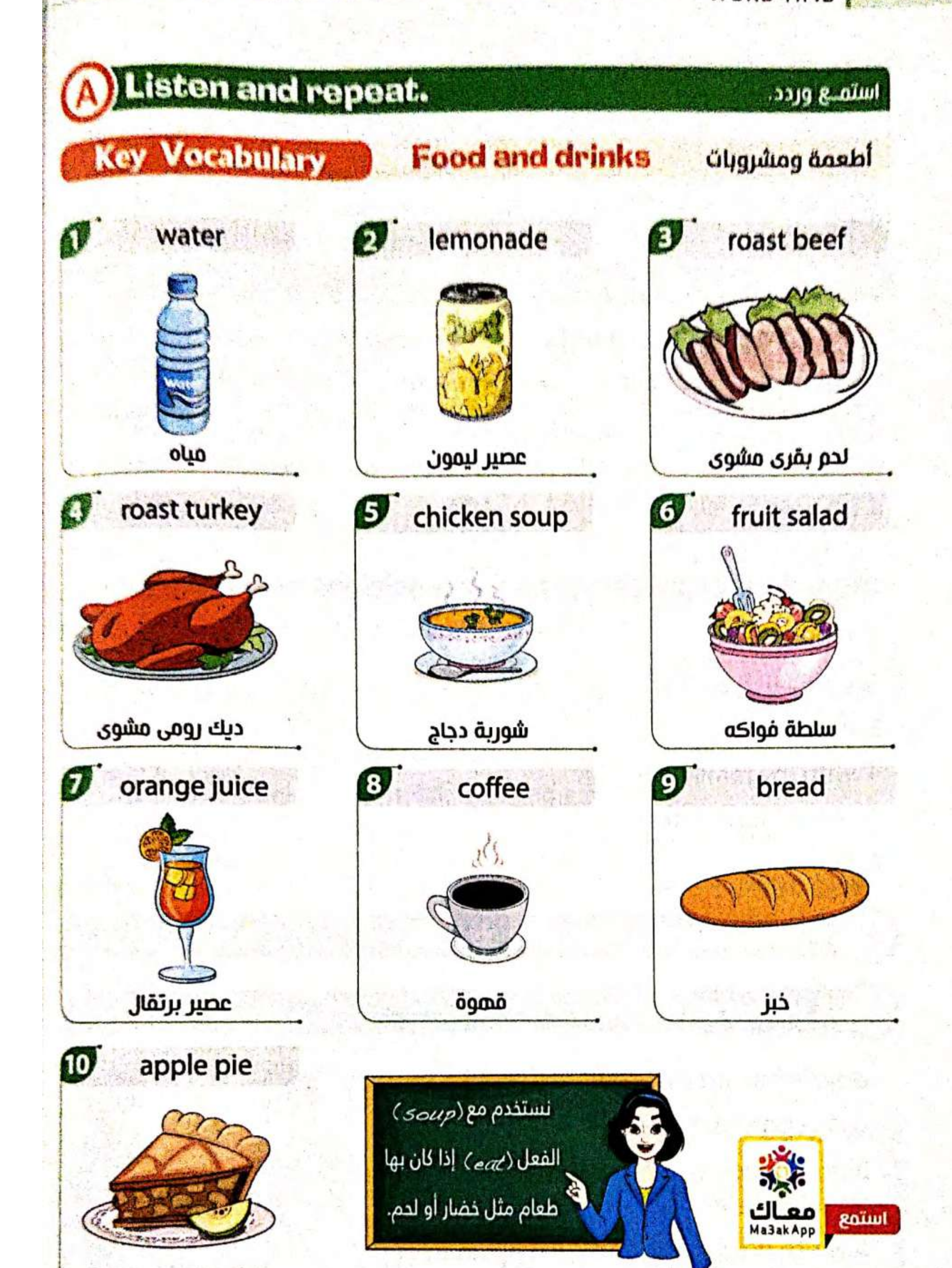
تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة والملحق



Word Time
SB page 8
WB page 8
MENU
MENU
NO PETS
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary **Food and drinks** أطعمة ومشروبات



Vocabulary

hot dog	سجق (نقانق)	tonight	الليلة
French fries	بطاطس (مقلية)	video	شريط فيديو
family	أسرة / عائلة	tomorrow	غداً

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
rent	يؤجر	rented	eat	يأكل	ate
watch	يشاهد	watched	drink	يشرب	drank
want	يريد	wanted	see	يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. I don't know.	١. لا أعرف.
2. rent a video	٢. يستأجر فيديو
3. see a film	٣. يشاهد فيلماً
4. with my family	٤. مع عائلتى / أسرتى
5. some more water	٥. المزيد من المياه
6. Sure !	٦. بالتأكيد / بالطبع!

B **Point and say the words.** أشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها .

C **Listen and point.** استمع وأشر .

Boy : What are you going to have ?

Girl : I don't know.

Boy : I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.

Girl : That sounds good. I'll have that, too.





Mona : I rented a video. Do you want to watch it tonight ?
Kareem : I can't. I'm going to see a film with my family. How about tomorrow ?
Mona : Sure!



Waiter : Here you are.
Woman : Thanks. It looks delicious.
Waiter : How about some more water ?
Woman : No, thanks.

Language Functions

1 Asking and expressing intention للسؤال والتعبير عما تنوى أن تفعله

- What are you going to have ?
- I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.
- I don't know. «عند عدم المعرفة» نستخدم:

2 Offer تقديم العرض

- Do you want to watch a film tonight ?
- I can't. «عند الرفض» نستخدم:

Remember



WB page 8

صيغة السؤال فى زمن الماضى :

أداة الإستفهام + did + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل (.inf) ..... ?

- What **did** you eat ?
  I ate roast beef.
- What **did** they drink ?
  They drank water.



General Exercises on Word Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(امتحان مجمع الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢١)

1. She likes drinking ....
   a. apple pie   b. turkey   c. coffee   d. bread
2. Do you want to .... the film tonight ?
   a. watch   b. watches   c. watching   d. watched
3. He .... going to have some orange juice.
   a. are   b. is   c. has   d. does
4. SB I'm going to .... a film.
   a. read   b. eat   c. see   d. have
5. SB I .... a video. Do you want to watch it tonight ?
   a. did   b. rented   c. cooked   d. played
6. SB .... about tomorrow ?
   a. Where   b. How   c. Why   d. When
7. I am going to have .... salad. *(Gharbia - Tanta 2020)*
   a. meat   b. roast   c. fruit   d. water
8. I .... chicken soup for dinner last night.
   a. has   b. have   c. had   d. don't have

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. delicious - good - bad - cake *(Menia - Samaloot 2020)* (.....................)
2. meatballs - steak - salad - juice *(Old Cairo 2020)* (.....................)
3. Who - What - Did - Which *(Gharbia - Tanta 2020)* (.....................)
4. water - bread - orange juice - lemonade *(Qena - Qus 2018)* (.....................)
5. rent - family - eat - go (.....................)

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. SB about - water - **How** - more - some ? *(Sharkia 2018)*

....

2. SB to - going - **I'm** - see - a film. *(Qena 2017)*

....

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your favourite food" اجابة عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(The New Valley 2015 / Qena 2018)

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. no, I don't like salad *(Menia - Deer Mawas 2020)*

....

2. what are Rodina and Heba going to have

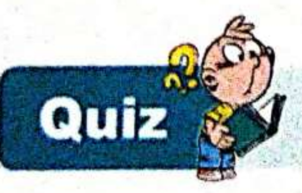
....



راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالى

أهم المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى درس الـ **(WORD TIME)**

water	مياه	chicken soup	شوربة دجاج
lemonade	عصير ليمون	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
roast beef	لحم بقرى مشوى	orange juice	عصير برتقال
roast turkey	ديك رومى مشوى	coffee	قهوة
bread	خبز	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح



اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات

Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 9&10 WB pages 9&10

Focus Time



A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. a bottle of water



زجاجة ماء

2. a can of lemonade



علبة عصير ليمون

3. a slice of turkey

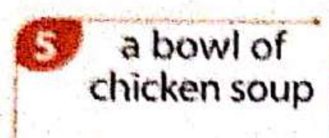


شريحة ديك رومى

4. a piece of apple pie

قطعة من فطيرة التفاح

5. a bowl of chicken soup



سلطانية شوربة دجاج

6. a glass of orange juice



كوب عصير برتقال

7. a cup of coffee



فنجان قهوة

8. a loaf of bread





رغيف خبز

B Listen and repeat

استمع وردد.


How much water did she have ?


She had one bottle of water.


How many bottles of water did she have ?

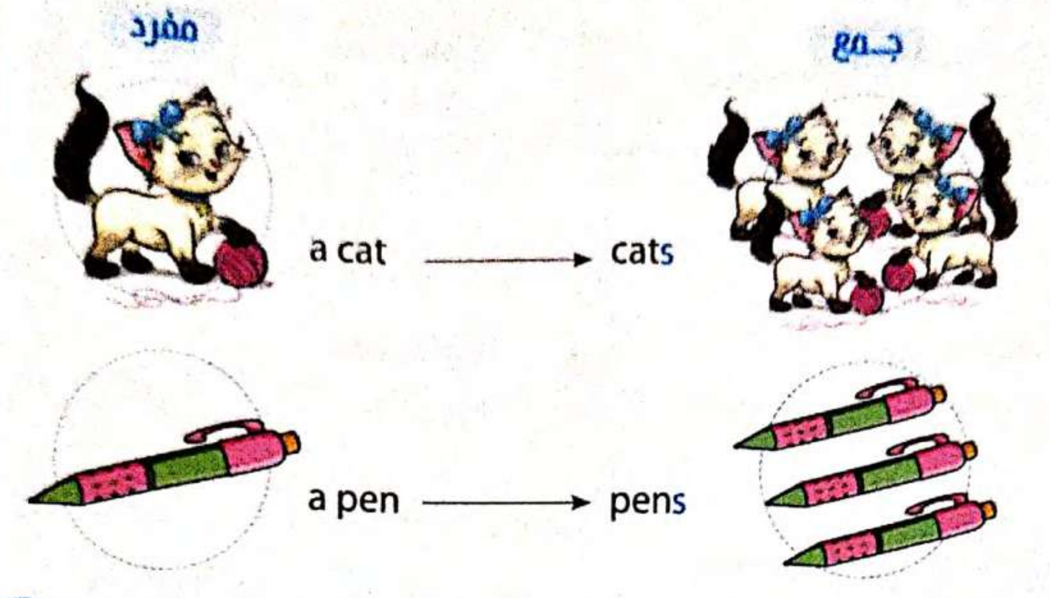

She had three bottles of water.

Language Focus



1 Countable nouns — ١- الأسماء المعدودة

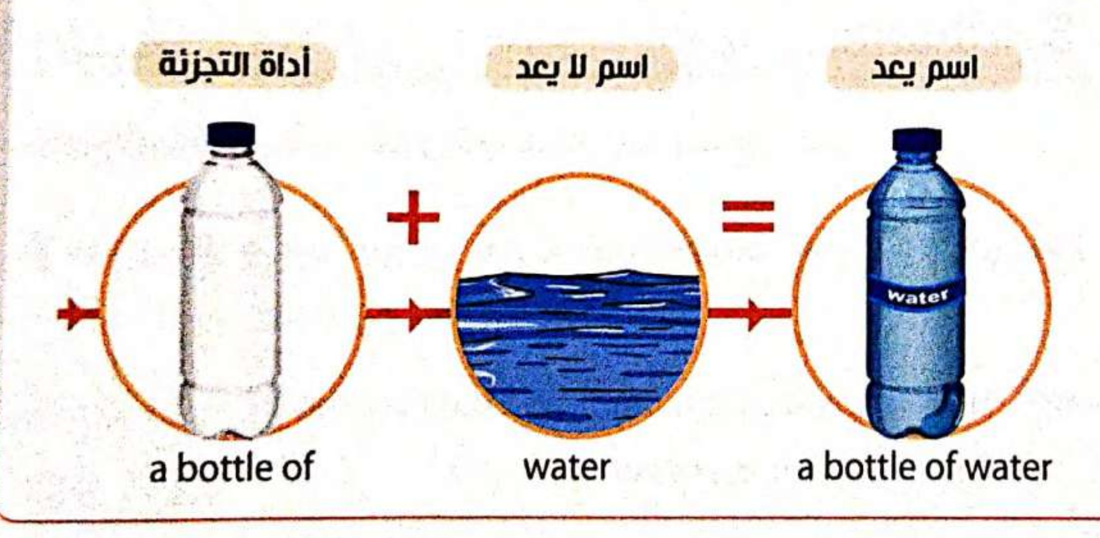
هى الأسماء التى تُعد ولها مفرد وجمع :



2 Uncountable nouns — ٢- الأسماء غير المعدودة

هى الأسماء التى لا تُعد وإذا أردنا أن نحدد كميتها فإننا نستخدم :

◀ أدوات التجزئة :



a slice of شريحة من → roast beef / roast turkey

a loaf of رغيف من → bread

a can of علبة صفيح من → lemonade

a piece of قطعة من → apple pie

a bottle of زجاجة من → water / milk

a glass of كوب من → water / milk / orange juice

a cup of فنجان من → tea / coffee

a bowl of سلطانية من → chicken soup / fruit salad

3 

٣- كم عدد ... ؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن شئ يُعد ويأتى بعدها اسم (**جمع**) يُعد.

How many + countable noun اسم جمع يعد **+** باقى السؤال **?**

ex. **How many** pieces of apple pie did they have ?
They had **four pieces** of apple pie.



! لاحظ تغيير الفعل (**have**) عند الإجابة إلى (**had**) لأن صيغة الإستفهام في زمن الماضي البسيط لوجود (did).

ex. How many cups of coffee **did** she **have** ?
She **had** two cups of coffee.

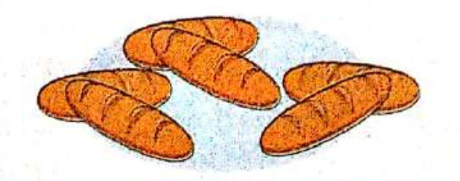


4 How much ...? ٤- كم كمية ...؟

◂ تستخدم للسؤال عن الكمية ويأتي بعدها اسم (**مفرد**) لا يعد.

How much + uncountable noun اسم مفرد لايعد + باقى السؤال **?**

ex. How much bread **did** he **have** ?
He **had** six loaves of bread.



Remember WB Page 9



Future with "going to" "going to"المستقبل باستخدام

Formation :

I → am
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → is
You / They / We / اسم جمع → are
} going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

Examples :

I'm going to have three bowls of fruit salad.





She's going to have one bottle of water.



They're going to have four glasses of orange juice.

Exercise on Language Focus

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She had a .... of bread.
   a. loaf b. glass c. bottle d. bowl
2. She's .... to have three slices of roast turkey.
   a. goes b. going c. went d. go
3. I will take a .... of apple pie. *(Matrouh - Siwa 2018)*
   a. cup b. glass c. piece d. bottle
4. He had a .... of chicken soup.
   a. piece b. bowl c. loaf d. bottle
5. They had three .... of roast beef.
   a. cans b. bottles c. slices d. cups
   (Qalyoubia - Shubra El Kheima 2019)
6. How .... bowls of chicken soup did she have ?
   a. old b. much c. many d. often
7. I'll have a .... of coffee, please. (امتحان مجمع أسيوط ٢٠٢١)
   a. cup b. can c. bowl d. bottle
8. How .... fruit salad did you have ?
   a. much b. tall c. high d. long

(C) Look at page (8). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة فى كتاب الطالب صفحة (٨) ثم استمع وأشر.

Practice Time

(A) Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How much bread did he have ? He had six loaves of bread.

1. How many pieces of apple pie did they have ?

   They had four pieces of apple pie.



2. How many bowls of chicken soup did she have ?

   ....

   ....



3. How much lemonade did you have ?

   We had two cans of lemonade.



4. ....

   .... ?

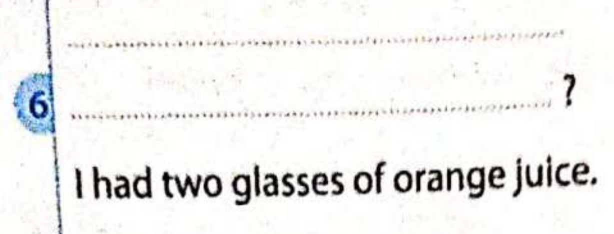
   She had two slices of roast beef.





5 How many cups of coffee did she have ?

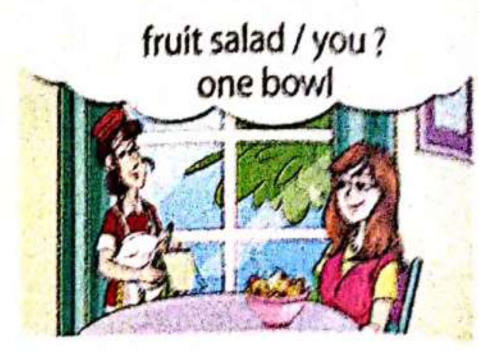
She had one cup of coffee.



6 .... ?

I had two glasses of orange juice.





7 How much fruit salad did you have ?

....

....



8 ....

.... ?

He had four slices of turkey.

B Look at page (8). Practise with a partner .

نظر إلى صفحة (٨) كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.



General
Exercises Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How ………………… water did you have ? (امتحان مجمع الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١)
   a. much b. tall c. long d. many
2. I'll take a ………………… of apple pie. *(Old Cairo 2020 / Port Said 2020)*
   a. cup b. glass c. bottle d. piece
3. They had two ………………… of bread. *(Qalyoubia - Obour 2020)*
   a. cans b. slices c. loaves d. cups
4. How ………………… cups of coffee do you have ? *(Old Cairo 2020)*
   a. is b. much c. many d. often
5. I had a loaf ………………… bread.
   a. of b. from c. by d. in
6. I will take a ………………… of roast turkey.
   a. cup b. glass c. slice d. can
7. SB How much fruit salad did you ………………… ?
   a. sound b. have c. drink d. watch
8. SB ………………… roast beef did you have ?
   a. How b. How many c. How much d. How often

2 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Kareem and Maha had a nice day. They went to the restaurant. Maha had a bowl of soup, spaghetti and meatballs and two glasses of orange juice. Kareem had two loaves of bread, three slices of pizza and a can of lemonade. Kareem and Maha love this restaurant because their food is the best in town. They usually go to this restaurant on Fridays.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem and Maha had a nice ....

a. year b. day c. week d. month

2. Maha had a .... of soup.

a. slice b. loaf c. bowl d. can

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much lemonade did Kareem have ?

....

4. Where did Kareem and Maha go ?

....

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bowl - cup - apple - glass *(Gharbia - Tanta 2020)* (..................
2. pie - How much - How many - How old (..................
3. a can of - rice - a bottle of - a cup of (..................
4. coffee - water - salad - tea *(Fayoum - Itsa 2020)* (..................
5. turkey - hot dog - cup - roast beef (..................

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. bottles of - have - **How many** - water - she - did ? *(Cairo - Mataria 2020)*

....

2. **He** - a - lemonade - can of - had. *(Cairo - Al Khalifa 2020)*

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. did Kareem and Ahmed drink coffee

....

2. How much bread did Ayman and adel have

....

Reading & Your Time

SB pages 11 & 12   WB pages 11 & 12

Key Vocabulary

Italian	إيطالي (الجنسية)	real	حقيقي
owner	مالك	the best	الأفضل
price	سعر / ثمن	chef	طاهٍ / رئيس الطهاة
serve	يقدم طعام		

Notes

- Italian　　١. الجنسيات تبدأ بحرف كبير (capital)

٢. نستخدم الفعل (serve) مع الطعام بمعنى يقدم طعامًا (يخدم).

- The restaurant serves breakfast.

٣. النطق الصوتي لحرفي (ch) في كلمة (chef) هو /ʃ/ مثل صوت حرف (ش) في اللغة العربية.

Active Vocabulary

new	جديد	address	عنوان
grandpa	جد	street	شارع
last	الماضي / الأخير	kids	أطفال صغار
downtown	وسط المدينة	bakery	مخبز
May	شهر مايو	Wednesday	يوم الأربعاء
town	مدينة (صغيرة)	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
here	هنا	lunch	وجبة الغداء
clean	نظيف / ينظف	dinner	وجبة العشاء
good	جيد		

Notes

- in town - in downtown - in Cairo　　١. تستخدم (in) قبل المدن والأماكن الكبيرة.

- on 5th May - on May 5th 2018　　٢. تستخدم (on) مع أي تاريخ يحتوي على رقم اليوم.

- in May　　- in 2018　　٣. بينما الشهور والسنين تُسبق بـ (in)

٤. حرف (d) في كلمة (Wednesday) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

- Grandpa Ali's restaurant　　٥. ('s) تعبر عن الملكية.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past ماضى
open	يفتح	opened	bring	يحضر	brought
own	يمتلك	owned	say	يقول	said
serve	يقدم طعام	served			

New places & people أماكن وأشخاص جدد

Italian restaurant	مطعم ايطالى
big mama = grandmother	الجدة
grandpa = grandfather	الجد

Reading Time

Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens

SB page 11

Introduction : مقدمة

"Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens" is a passage from a newspaper about the opening of Grandpa Ali's Restaurant and the opinions of people about it.

"إفتتاح مطعم الجد على" هى فقرة من جريدة عن إفتتاح مطعم "الجد على" وآراء الناس فيه.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo.
   ١. «الجد على» مطعم إيطالى جديد فى وسط مدينة القاهرة.

2. The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef at the restaurant.
   ٢. الجد على الحقيقى هو جد المالك ورئيس الطهاة فى المطعم.

3. Kids under five eat free.
   ٣. الأطفال دون سن الخمس سنوات يأكلون بالمجان.

4. Grandpa Ali's restaurant is clean and the prices are good.
   ٤. مطعم الجد على نظيف والأسعار جيدة.



Listen and read along.

Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens

by Adel Ibrahim



Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant [(1)] in downtown Cairo. It opened on May 5th. Who is Grandpa Ali ? Is he the owner [(2)] ? No! The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef [(3)] at the restaurant.

Last Saturday, Laila Abdo and her friend Diana Smith had lunch at Grandpa Ali's. "Their pizza is the best pizza in town," Laila said. Diana said, "I'm going to bring [(4)] my children here. Kids [(5)] under five eat free [(6)]."

Grandpa Ali's is clean and the prices [(7)] are good. The address [(8)] is 12 Al Ahram Street. They're open daily [(9)] from 11:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m. They serve [(10)] lunch and dinner.

Check Vocabulary
(1) مطعم
(2) مالك
(3) رئيس الطهاة
(4) يحضر
(5) أطفال
(6) مجانى
(7) سعر / ثمن
(8) عنوان
(9) يومياً
(10) يقدم طعام

Exercise on Vocabulary

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Grandpa Ali is the .... at the restaurant.
   a. chef b. teacher c. doctor d. farmer
2. I'm going to .... my children here tomorrow.
   a. play b. give c. open d. bring
3. SB Kids under five eat for .... *(Souhag 2018)*
   a. quick b. best c. sad d. free

4. This restaurant .... good lunch and dinner.
a. serves b. eats c. opens d. plays

5. What's your .... ? - I live at 12 Nawar Street, Giza.
a. dress b. address c. name d. job

6. The shop is open .... from 11:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m.
a. day b. days c. daily d. a day

7. A chef is a person who .... food at a restaurant.
a. cooks b. plays c. eats d. orders

8. The .... of this sandwich is good.
a. price b. prize c. street d. ice

B Listen and circle True or False.

استمع وضع دائرة حول (True) أو (False).

1. Grandpa Ali's is a bakery.	True	False
2. Laila Abdo said, "Their pasta is the best pasta in town."	True	False
3. Kids under five eat free.	True	False
4. Grandpa Ali's serves breakfast and lunch.	True	False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.

1. What is the name of the restaurant ?
The name of the restaurant is Grandpa Ali's.

2. Where is Grandpa Ali's ?
....

3. Who is Grandpa Ali's ?
....

4. When is Grandpa Ali's open ?
....

Big Mama's Restaurant Opens

WB page 11

Introduction : مقدمة

"Big Mama's Restaurant Opens" is a passage from a newspaper about the opening of Big Mama's Restaurant and the opinions of people about it.

"افتتاح مطعم "الجدة" البج ماما" هى فقرة من جريدة عن افتتاح مطعم (الجدة) البج ماما وآراء الناس فيه.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in Cairo.
١. مطعم الجدة «البج ماما» مطعم إيطالى جديد فى مدينة القاهرة.
2. It opened on Wednesday. ٢. تم افتتاح مطعم الجدة فى يوم الأربعاء.
3. Big Mama is the owner. She's the chef, too.
٣. بج ماما (الجدة) هى المالك ورئيسة الطهاة أيضًا.
4. Kids under six eat free. ٤. الأطفال دون سن السادسة يأكلون بالمجان.

اقرأ القطعة فى صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. How many glasses of orange juice can you drink ?
....
2. How many slices of roast beef can you eat ?
....
3. How much lemonade can you drink ?
....
4. How much fruit salad can you eat ?
....

B Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

اسأل أصدقائك حول الأطعمة الموجودة في الجدول ثم اكتب أسماءهم وضع دائرة حول Yes أو No.

* Do you want a slice of roast beef for dinner ?

Food	Name	Yes / No
1. a slice of roast beef	Rodina	(Yes) No
2. a bowl of fruit salad	Roqia	Yes (No)
3. a piece of apple pie		Yes No
4. a bowl of soup		Yes No

C Review. Read and write the answers.

اقرا واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Did you have a piece of apple pie for breakfast today ?

....

2. Do you like bread ?

....

3. What's your favourite food ?

....

4. Did you have a glass of milk this morning ?

....



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالى

أهم الجمل التى وردت فى درسي الـ **(READING & YOUR TIME)**

1. Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo.
2. Kids under five eat free.
3. The restaurant is clean and the prices are good.
4. The restaurant serves breakfast and lunch.
5. Did you have a piece of apple pie for breakfast today ?



General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Ahmed: Where did you have lunch yesterday ?

Hany : I had lunch at a (1) .... Italian restaurant.

Ahmed: (2) .... is it ?

Hany : It's in (3) ....

Ahmed: What does it (4) .... ?

Hany : It serves lunch and dinner.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. serve - open - bring - bread (..................)
2. town - boy - girl - friend (..................)
3. waiter - chef - teacher - price (..................)
4. rice - bread - beef - restaurant (..................)
5. good - clean - pizza - free (..................)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

There is a new restaurant in our town. It's across from the bank. My friend and I had lunch in restaurant. We had spaghetti and meatballs. The food was delicious. The restaurant is clean and tidy مُنَظم. The prices are good. Children under five are free. I'm going to bring my sister to the restaurant next Friday.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A new .... is open in the town.

a. bank b. restaurant c. hotel d. library

2. They had .... there.

a. lunch b. breakfast c. dinner d. snack

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is the new restaurant ?

....

4. How much does it cost for children under five ? *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:



Write an email to your friend Nadia telling her about a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. Your name is Salma and your email address is salma@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nadia@gmail.com.

(Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2020)

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. opened - on - May - **It** - 5th .

....

2. SB is - **When** - open - Ali's - Grandpa ?

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where did you go last Friday, Adel *(South Sinai 2017)*

....

2. Grandpa Ali is the owner s grandfather

....



How to write

كيف تكتب



Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التى تعمل على إسترجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

1. How much bread did he have ?
   - He had six loaves of bread.
2. How many pieces of apple pie did they have ?
   - They had four pieces of apple pie.

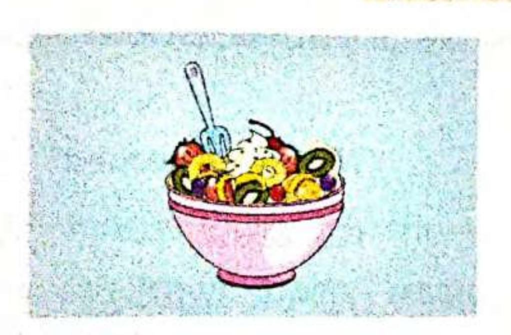
Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر وأكتب الكلمة

juice - soup - fruit



1. How much .... salad did he have ?



2. I had a glass of orange ....

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• **Choose and write the word :**

long - many - much

1. How .... water did he have ?
   - He had a bottle of water.
2. How .... cups of coffee did you have?
   - I had two cups of coffee.

Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة: شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها.

• **Choose and complete the idea web.**

soup - loaves - can - did

How many

- .... of bread did you have ?
- bottles of water .... you have?

I had

- a .... of lemonade.
- two bowls of chicken ....

Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

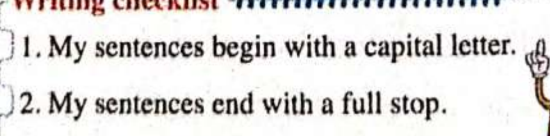
• **Read, cut and stick.**

"An Italian restaurant"

Cut & Paste here from page 293

"My favourite food"

Cut & Paste here from page 293



Writing checklist

1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
2. My sentences end with a full stop.
3. My words are in the correct order.

تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. will – have – **I** – steak – a.

2. a cup – had – **Heba** – coffee – of.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1		will have	
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. **Don't** – too – much – coffee – drink.

2. potato – a baked – **Give** – me – , please.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. did – have – **How much** – he – water ?

2. the – is – **When** – open – restaurant ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1		did			
2			the restaurant		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you – to – **Are** – order – ready ?

2. you – want – **Do** – watch – a film – to ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				



Test your skills

Unit 2

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next pa...

...فاتتك العلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد

...مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.
Listen and tick (✓).

استمع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة التالية. استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Are you ready to order ?
   - ◯ Medium, please. And a baked potato.
   - ◯ I think so. I'll have a steak.

2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

2. Which word goes in the sentence ?
   He had a ____ of chicken soup.
   - ◯ bowl
   - ◯ piece

3 Writing skill

3. Write three sentences about an Italian restaurant.

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن المطعم الإيطالي.

____

____

____

My Spelling Test

Look and write.

1. ____________ 

2. ____________ 

3. ____________ 

4. ____________ 

Self evaluation التقييم الذاتي

My work in Unit is:

- 🔵 ممتاز
- 🟢 جيد جدا
- 🟡 جيد
- 🔴 غير جيد



Review on Unit 2

مراجعة على **Unit 2** في ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation

Waitress : Hello. Are you ready to order ?
Woman : I think so. I'll have a steak.
Waitress : Rare, medium or well done ?
Woman : Medium, please. And a baked potato.
Waitress : How about a salad ?
Woman : Sounds good.
Man : What's today's special ?
Waitress : Spaghetti and meatballs.
Man : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.
Waitress : Here you are.
Man : Thanks. It looks delicious.

2. Vocabulary

water	ماء
coffee	قهوة
fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
lemonade	عصير ليمون
roast beef	لحم بقري مشوي
roast turkey	ديك رومي مشوي
chicken soup	شوربة دجاج
apple pie	فطيرة تفاح
orange juice	عصير برتقال
bread	خبز

3. Language Focus

* Food and drink quantities
كميات الطعام والشراب

* a bottle of milk / water
زجاجة من (لبن / مياه)

* a can of lemonade
علبة صفيح من (عصير الليمون)

* a slice of turkey
شريحة من (ديك رومي)

* a piece of apple pie
قطعة من (فطيرة التفاح)

* a bowl of chicken soup
سلطانية من (شوربة الدجاج)

* a glass of orange juice
كوب من (عصير البرتقال)

* a cup of coffee
فنجان من (القهوة)

* a loaf of bread
رغيف من (الخبز)

Workbook On Conversation Time page 7

A. Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. | Are | order | ready | . | Hello | you | ? | to |

Hello. Are you ready to order ?

2. | so | I'll | . | a | have | I | steak | . | think |

I think so. I'll have a steak.

3. | How | about | ? | salad | a |

How about a salad ?

4. | good | ? | special | today's | Sounds | . | What's |

Sounds good. What's today's special ?

5. | Spaghetti | and | . | meatballs |

Spaghetti and meatballs.

B. Look at A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
انظر إلى الفقرة A. واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d :

1. What will the man have ?
   - a. soup and salad
   - b. steak and salad
   - c. salad and sandwich
   - d. soup and sandwich
2. What's today's special ?
   - a. meatballs
   - b. spaghetti and meatballs
   - c. steak
   - d. rice
3. Does the man want a salad ?
   - a. Yes
   - b. No

UNIT 2

Workbook On Word Time page 8

A. What did they eat and drink ? Look and write:
ماذا أكلوا وشربوا ؟ انظر واكتب



1. She ate roast beef. She drank lemonade.
2. She ate apple pie. She drank water.
3. He ate fruit salad. He drank orange juice.
4. He ate chicken soup. He drank coffee.

B. Look at the chart. Answer the questions:
انظر إلى الرسم التوضيحي وأجب عن الأسئلة :

✓ = Yes
✗ = No

	(coffee)	(pie)	(bread)	(meat)
Mona	✓	✗	✓	✗
Kareem	✗	✓	✗	✓
Ali and Basma	✗	✗	✓	✓

1. Did Kareem drink coffee ? No, he didn't.
2. Did Ali and Basma eat bread ? Yes, they did.

Workbook On Focus Time , page 9 ,

A. Read and write: اقرأ واكتب :

1. a bottle / two bottles
2. a can / four cans
3. a slice / three slices
4. a piece / two pieces
5. a bowl / six bowls
6. a cup / seven cups
7. a glass / two glasses
8. a loaf / three loaves

B. Read and write: اقرأ واكتب :

1. They're going to have four glasses of orange juice.
2. He's going to have three bowls of fruit salad.
3. She's going to have three slices of roast turkey.
4. She's going to have one bottle of water.

C. Write the questions and answers : اكتب الأسئلة والإجابات :

1. How many glasses of orange juice did Samir have ?
   He had five glasses of orange juice.
2. How much chicken soup did Amira have ?
   She had three bowls of chicken soup.

Workbook On Practice Time page 10

A. Look at the chart. Answer the questions:

انظر إلى الرسم التوضيحي وأجب عن الأسئلة :

Wael	2 cans	6 slices of turkey	pieces of cake
Ola	5 bottles of water	pieces of cake	3 cups of coffee

1. How much water did Ola have ?
   Ola had five bottles of water.
2. How much coffee did Ola have?
   She had three cups of coffee.
3. How much lemonade did Wael have ?
   He had two cans of lemonade.
4. How much turkey did Wael have ?
   He had six slices of turkey.
5. How much cake did Ola and Wael have ?
   They had six pieces of cake.

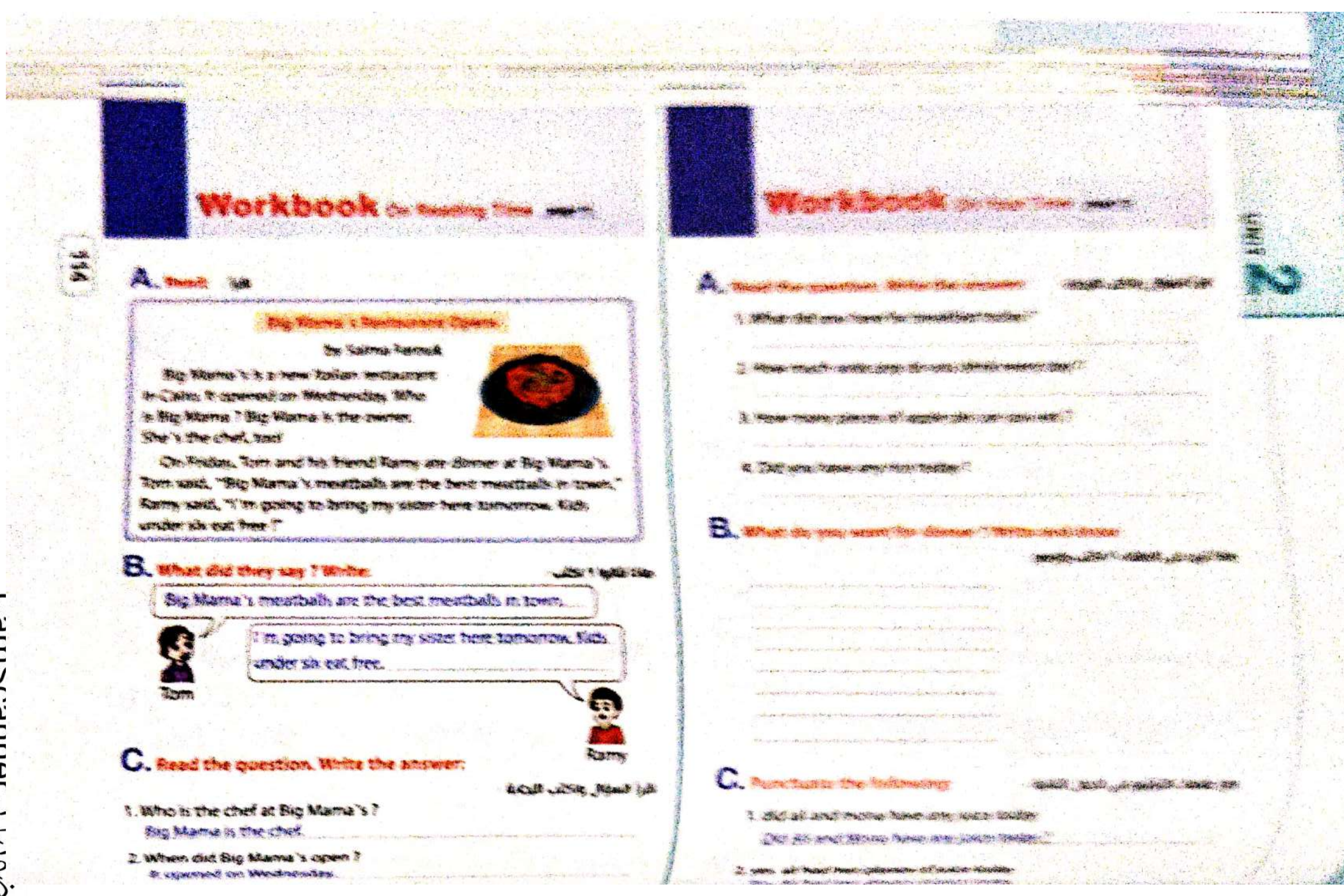
B. Read and write: اقرأ واكتب :







1. How much lemonade did he have ?
   He had two cans of lemonade.
2. How much orange juice did they have ?
   They had one glass of orange juice.
3. How many bowls of fruit salad did you have ?
   I had one bowl of fruit salad.
4. How many bottles of water did you have ?
   We had two bottles of water.



Workbook

A. Read.

Big Mama's Restaurant Opens

Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. It opened on Wednesday. Who is Big Mama? Big Mama is the owner. She's the chef, too!

On Friday, Tom and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Mama's. Tom said, "Big Mama's meatballs are the best meatballs in town." Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under six eat free!"

B. What did they say? Write.

C. Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Who is the chef at Big Mama's?
   Big Mama is the chef.
2. When did Big Mama's open?
   It opened on Wednesday.

Workbook

A.

B.

C.

Exam Language Bank



[illegible]

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

[illegible]

mood	حالة مزاجية	water	مياه
restaurant	مطعم	Italian	إيطالي
menu	قائمة طعام	price	سعر / ثمن
roast beef	لحم بقري مشوي	serve	يقدم (الطعام)
bread	خبز	chef	طباخ
lemonade	عصير ليمون	open	يفتح
chicken soup	شوربة دجاج	owner	مالك



2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

[illegible]

1. I'm going to[1] have three bowls of fruit salad.
2. They had four pieces[2] of apple pie.
3. How many[3] pieces of apple pie did they have ?
4. How much[4] bread did he have ?

Check Language

(1)	الجملة الخبرية في زمن المستقبل باستخدام going to
(2)	أحد أدوات التجزئة
(3)	تستخدم عند السؤال عن العدد (مع الأسماء التي تُعد)
(4)	تستخدم عند السؤال عن الكمية (مع الأسماء التي لا تُعد)

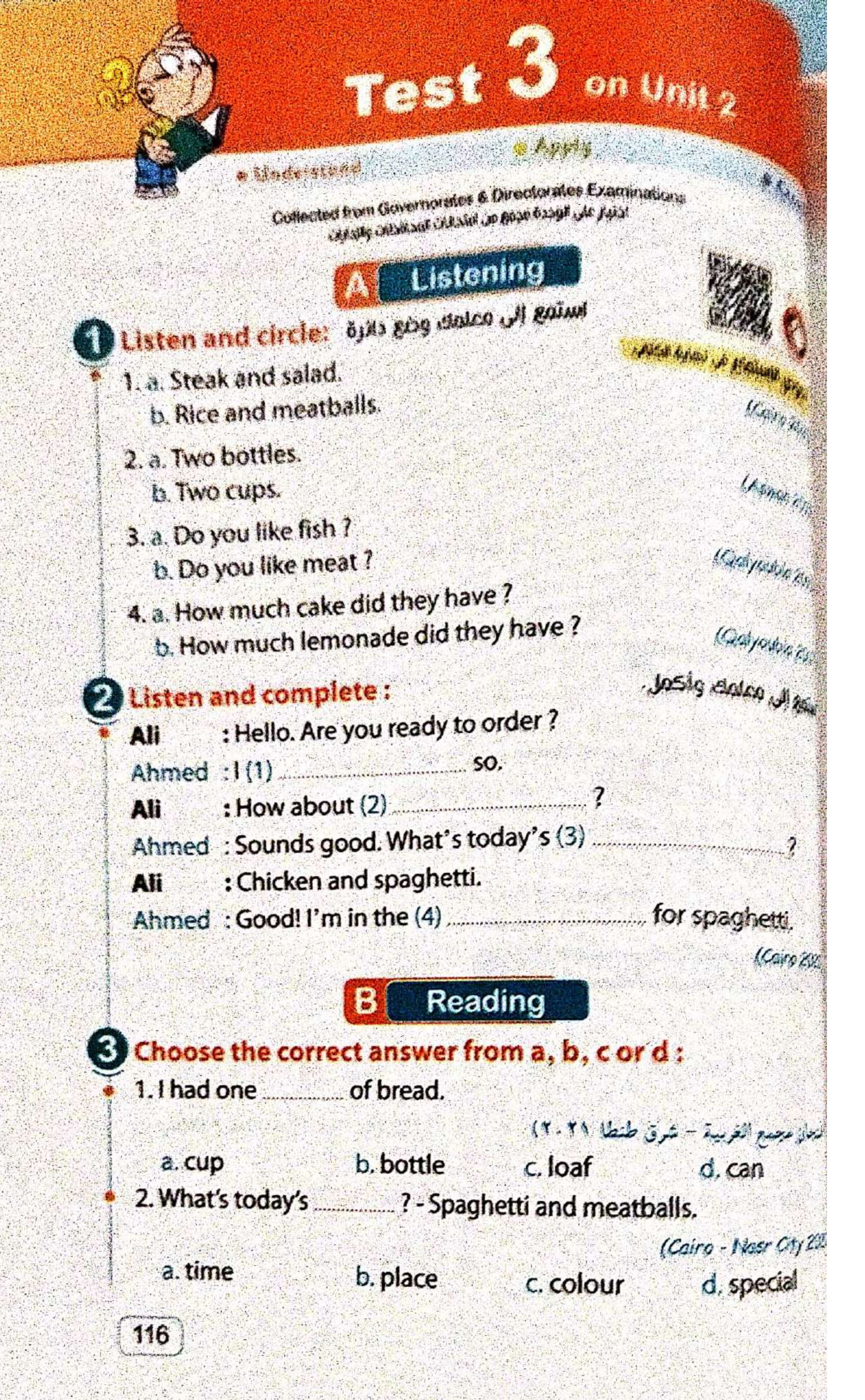


3. Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٠)

Questions	Answers
• Are you ready to order ?	- I think so. I'll have a steak.
• How about a salad ?	- Sounds good.
• What's today's special ?	- Spaghetti and meatballs.



Test 3 on Unit 2

● Understand ● Apply

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations

اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. Steak and salad.
   b. Rice and meatballs.
2. a. Two bottles.
   b. Two cups.
3. a. Do you like fish ?
   b. Do you like meat ?
4. a. How much cake did they have ?
   b. How much lemonade did they have ?

2 Listen and complete :

Ali : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Ahmed : I (1) .... so.

Ali : How about (2) .... ?

Ahmed : Sounds good. What's today's (3) .... ?

Ali : Chicken and spaghetti.

Ahmed : Good! I'm in the (4) .... for spaghetti.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I had one .... of bread.

   a. cup b. bottle c. loaf d. can

2. What's today's .... ? - Spaghetti and meatballs.

   (Cairo - Nasr City)

   a. time b. place c. colour d. special

3. Ahmed is the .... at the restaurant. He cooks well. *(Menofia 2015)*

a. driver b. waiter c. farmer d. chef

4. How .... water did he have ? *(Giza - Badrasheen 2018)*

a. much b. many c. often d. long

5. Did you have a glass .... orange juice this morning ? *(Menia 2016)*

a. in b. of c. for d. from

6. She is .... have two cans of lemonade. *(Giza 2018)*

a. go b. going to c. went d. going

7. .... cans of lemonade did she have ? *(Suez 2015)*

a. How b. Where c. How much d. How many

8. Do you want the steak rare, ... or well done ? *(Alexandria 2014)*

a. high b. medium c. large d. small

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. lemonade - roast beef - soup - water *(Port Said 2020)* (....................)
2. ready - free - today - delicious *(Alexandria 2020)* (....................)
3. bread - steak - meat - help *(Menofia - Shebeen El-Kom 2018)* (....................)
4. chef - eat - play - swim *(Qena 2015)* (....................)
5. a slice of - pizza - a piece of - a kilo of *(Sharkia 2015)* (....................)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Tamer, his mother and his sister Heba went out to have dinner in Ali Baba's Restaurant. Tamer ordered pizza. His mother ordered roast beef. Heba ordered baked potato and meatballs.

People like to have food in Ali Baba's because the foods are delicious and the prices are good. Ali Baba's Restaurant is open daily from 11 : 00 a.m to 10 : 00 p.m.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heba ordered .... and meatballs .

a. pizza b. baked potato c. roast beef d. fish

2. The restaurant is open daily from 11 : 00 a.m. to .... p.m.
a. 7 : 00 b. 8 : 00 c. 9 : 00 d. 10 : 00

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Tamer have dinner last Friday ?

4. Why do people like to have the food in Ali Baba's restaurant ?

C Writing



6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences : *(Gharbia ...)*

Write an email to your friend Adham to tell him about your daily breakfast. Your name is Adel. Your email address is adel@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adham@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. do - sugar - **How** - you - much - have ? *(Kafr El-Sheikh 20..)*

....

2. going - soup - **I'm** - chicken - to have. *(Gharbia - Tanta 20..)*

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Did ali and ahmed have a piece of cake ? *(Beni Suef 20..)*

....

2. I ll have soup and salad *(Alexandria 20..)*

....



Test 4 on Unit 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



تنويه | يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. He had six loaves of bread.
   b. He had two loaves of bread.
2. a. Thanks. I'll have meat and rice.
   b. I think so. I'll have a steak.
3. a. How many cups of coffee do you have ?
   b. How many glasses of orange juice do you have ?
4. a. Are you ready to order ?
   b. What's today's special ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Waiter : May I take your order now ?
Ayman : I'd like an (1) .... pie, please.
Waiter : Would you like something to (2) .... ?
Ayman : Some (3) .... , please.
Waiter : How do you (4) .... your tea ?
Ayman : Without sugar.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. SB Grandpa Ali's is open daily .... 11:00 a.m. to 10 :00 p.m.
   a. across from b. under c. on d. from
2. He had a .... of lemonade.
   a. slice b. can c. box d. loaf

3. At this restaurant, children under five eat ....

a. free b. hee c. three d. tree

4. He ate a loaf of bread .... breakfast.

a. of b. on c. for d. at

5. My uncle is a good .... He cooks well.

a. doctor b. teacher c. chef d. receptionist

6. She likes to drink chicken ....

a. pie b. turkey c. soup d. water

7. Farouk's New Italian restaurant is clean and the prices .... good.

a. be b. are c. was d. is

8. How .... fruit salad can you eat ?

a. many b. much c. long d. often

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. juice - water - lemonade - apple pie (............)
2. bread - roast beef - turkey - soda pop (............)
3. eat - drink - orange - make (............)
4. slice - man - loaf - bowl (............)
5. bakery - restaurant - can - museum (............)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Big Adel's is a new Italian restaurant in Alexandria. It opened last month. Who is Big Adel ? Big Adel is the owner. He's the chef at the restaurant, too!

On Friday, Ahmed and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Adel's . Ahmed said, "Big Adel's meatballs are the best meatballs in town." Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under six eat free !"

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Big Adel's is the .... of a new Italian restaurant.

a. woman b. owner c. kid d. man

2. Big Adel's is a new Italian restaurant in ....
   a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Alexandria d. Italy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Big Adel's open ?

....

4. Who eat free at Big Adel's ?

....

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"An Italian restaurant"

حله في نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. delicious - **These** - look - meatballs.

....

2. SB you - like - bread - **Do** ?

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. WB did Ali and Mona have any juice today

....

2. Grandpa ali s restaurant serves delicious food.

....



Stop here!

1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

1 Read and circle:

1. What's today's special?
   a. It looks delicious.
   b. Spaghetti and meatballs.
2. Rare, medium or well done?
   a. Medium, please. And a baked potato.
   b. A steak and a baked potato.
3. I think so. I'll have a steak.
   a. Are you ready to order?
   b. How about a salad?
4. They had four loaves of bread.
   a. How much fruit salad did you have?
   b. How much bread did they have?

2 Punctuate the following sentence:

what s your favourite food

....

2. Use your brain, think smart

- **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. going to - I'm - my sister - here - bring - tomorrow.

....

2. didn't - Ola - have - salad - fruit.

....



Quiz 1 on Units 1 & 2

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدتين 1 و 2

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات السابقة.

Model A

Marks

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Was there a pavement .... the hotel ?
   a. on b. under c. above d. in front of
2. Are you .... to order ?
   a. hurry b. late c. ready d. good
3. We saw the Mummy .... in the museum.
   a. towers b. schools c. parks d. rooms
4. My best .... is vanilla.
   a. flavour b. dessert c. colour d. kind
5. This box is so heavy. I .... carry it.
   a. doesn't b. can't c. isn't d. aren't

Model B



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How .... a salad ?
   a. on b. about c. at d. in
2. Does the price .... the delivery خدمة التوصيل ?
   a. include b. expect c. cook d. buy
3. How .... slices of turkey did you have ?
   a. many b. much c. old d. often
4. .... invented the sandwich ?
   a. Which b. What c. When d. Who
5. I'm in the .... for spaghetti for lunch.
   a. look b. menu c. mood d. smell

UNIT 3

Daily Activities
أنشطة يومية



تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب،
تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات،
الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب،

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- shop for a pie at a bakery
  - التسوق لشراء فطيرة من مخبز
- express activities in the past
  - التعبير عن أنشطة باستخدام زمن الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
  - التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a short story — قراءة قصة قصيرة

Vocabulary

- daily activities
  - تعلم المفردات الخاصة بالأنشطة اليومية

Grammar

- emphatic pronouns — تعلم ضمائر التوكيد
  by (myself, himself, herself, yourself, yourselves, themselves , ourselves)
- simple past, affirmative & negative statements
  - تعلم زمن الماضي البسيط (الجمل الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية)

لإتقان الوحدة :

- كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.
- Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.
- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

Conversation Time

SB page 13 WB page 13

Key Vocabulary

daily activities	أنشطة يومية	fresh	طازج
What kind ...?	ما نوع ... ؟	too	جدًا / أيضًا
cherry	كريز	out of	استنفد / نفد
expensive	غالِ الثمن	pie	فطيرة

Notes

1. What kinds of pies do you have ? — ١. تستخدم (kind) كاسم بمعنى (نوع) :

She is kind. — وتستخدم كصفة بمعنى (طيب / عطوف) :

2. It's too expensive. — ٢. إذا جاء بعد (too) صفة يكون معناها جدًا.

٣. أما إذا جاءت (too) فى نهاية الجملة يكون معناها أيضًا ونضع قبلها (,) .

3. I like fish. I like meat ,too.

Active Vocabulary

customer	زبون	peach	خوخ
How much ... ?	كم ثمن...؟	apple	تفاحة
pound	جنيه	nice	جميل
each	كل(على حدة)	chocolate chip cookies	رقائق البسكويت بالشيكولاتة
baker	خباز		
bakery	مخبز	lemon cookies	بسكويت بالليمون
today	اليوم	peanut butter	زبدة الفول السودانى
lemon	ليمون	piaster = piastre	قرش (عملة)

Notes

1. each — ١. كلمة (each) تعنى كل (على حده)

- They're 4 pounds each. — أى أن الفطيرة الواحدة تبلغ تكلفتها ٤ جنيهات.

2. all ⟶ اسم جمع — ٢. كلمة (all) تعنى (كل)

- All pies cost 20 L.E. — أى أن كل الفطائر الموجودة تبلغ تكلفتها ٢٠ جنيه.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة					
Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
can	يستطيع	could	get	يحصل على	got
take	يأخذ	took	have	يمتلك / يتناول	had

Important expressions تعبيرات هامة

1. That's too expensive.	١. هذا غالى الثمن جدًا (غالى جدًا لدرجة لا يمكن شراءه).
2. Sorry.	٢. آسف.
3. We're out of	٣. ليس لدينا ... / استنفذنا ...
4. Oh!	٤. تستخدم للتعبير عن الإندهاش (أوه !).
5. Great!	٥. عظيم / رائع!

Exercise Vocabulary

● **Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. lemon - apple - water - peach
   (Sharkia 2017 / El-Menshah - Souhag 2019) (......................)
2. juice - water - lemonade - pie *(Damietta 2014)* (......................)
3. expensive - take - fresh - great (......................)
4. peanut - chocolate - pound - cookie (......................)
5. baker - waiter - customer - bakery (......................)

Daily Activities أنشطة يومية

• **Characters** شخصيات المحادثة

a customer
زبون

a baker
خباز

•**Topic** موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is at a bakery. A man wants to buy a pie.

تدور محادثة اليوم فى مخبز حيث أن هناك رجلًا يريد أن يشترى فطيرة.

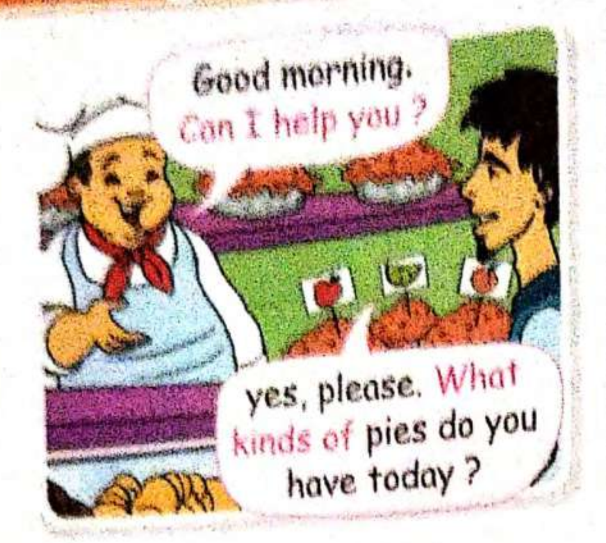


Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



Baker : Good morning. Can I help you ? **Customer** : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?	**الخباز** : صباح الخير. هل يمكننى مساعدتك ؟ **الزبون** : نعم من فضلك. ما أنواع الفطائر التى لديكم اليوم ؟
Baker : We have lemon, peach and apple.	**الخباز** : لدينا فطائر ليمون وخوخ وتفاح.
Customer : Do you have any cherry pies ? **Baker** : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.	**الزبون** : هل لديك أى فطائر بالكريز ؟ **الخباز** : آسف. لقد نفذ ما لدينا من فطائر الكريز. لكن فطائر التفاح جيدة جدًا.
Customer : How much are they ? **Baker** : They're ten pounds each.	**الزبون** : كم ثمنها ؟ **الخباز** : عشرة جنيهات للواحدة.
Customer : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies ? **Baker** : They're five pounds each.	**الزبون** : ياه، إنها غالية جدًا. كم ثمن فطائر الخوخ ؟ **الخباز** : خمسة جنيهات للواحدة.
Customer : Okay. I'll take one. **Baker** : Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.	**الزبون** : حسنًا. سوف آخذ واحدة. **الخباز** : عظيم! سأحضر لك فطيرة طازجة.

Language Functions



1

• لعرض المساعدة على شخص ما نستخدم :

- **Can I help you ?**

- هل يمكننى مساعدتك ؟

• عند السؤال عن نوع المنتج نستخدم :

- **What kinds of** (pies) **do you have today ?**

- ما أنواع (الفطائر) التى لديكم اليوم ؟



2

• غالبًا نستخدم الضمير (we) بدلاً من (I) عندما نتحدث بالنيابة عن المكان الذى نعمل فيه :

- **We have lemon, peach and apple.**

– لدينا فطائر بالليمون والخوخ والتفاح.

Do you have any cherry pies ?

Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

3

• للاستفسار عن وجود منتج معين نستخدم :

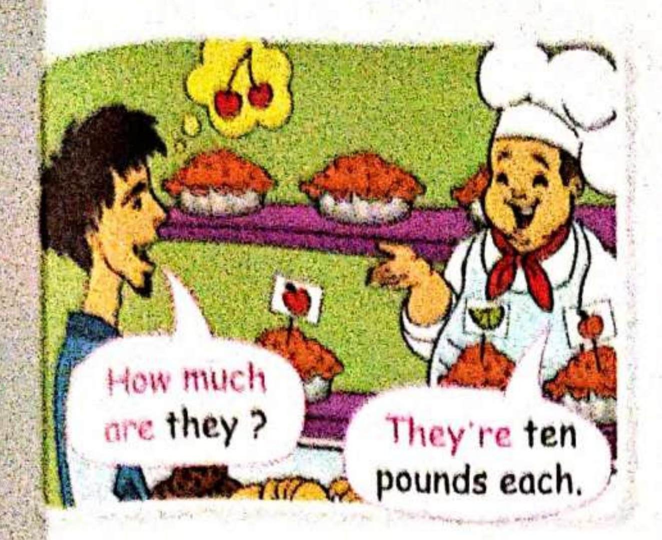
- **Do you have any** (cherry pies) ?

- هل لديكم أى من (فطائر الكريز) ؟

• عند الإعتذار لعدم وجود المنتج أو لنفاده نستخدم :

- **Sorry. We're out of** cherry.

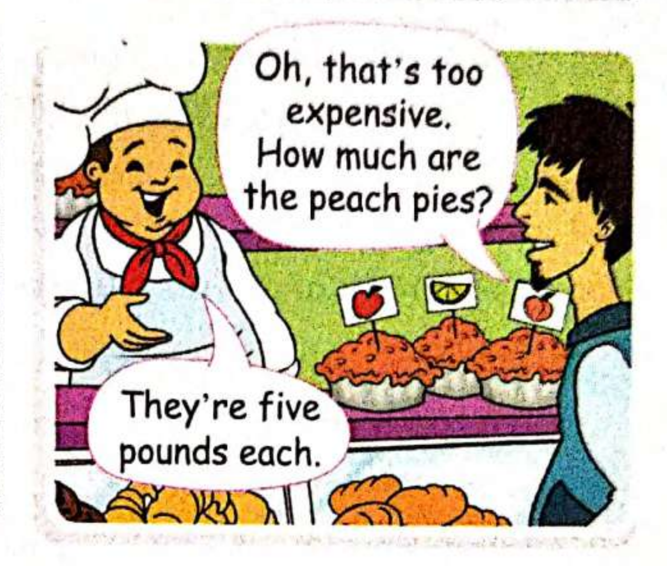
- معذرة. لقد نفذ ما لدينا من فطائر الكريز.





4

- للسؤال عن ثمن شئ ما نستخدم :
- How much ... ?
– كم ثمن ... ؟
- How much are they ?
- وللرد نستخدم :
- They're (ten pounds) each.
– ثمن الواحدة عشرة جنيهات.



5

- تستخدم (Oh) للتعبير عن الإندهاش.
- Oh ! That's too expensive.
– أوه ! انه غالى الثمن جدًا.
- too expensive
– تستخدم للتعبير عن أن هذا الشيء غالى جدًا لدرجة لايتمكن الشخص من شراءه.



6

- تستخدم (Okay) للتعبير عن الموافقة على شئ ما.
- Okay. I'll take one.
– حسنًا. سوف أخذ واحدة.
- تستخدم (مصدر الفعل will +inf.) لاتخاذ قرار سريع.
- I'll take ...
- I'll get ...

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة السابقة.



General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand • Apply • Crea

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. We have lemon, peach and apple.
   b. We have cherry, apple and orange. *(Beni Suef 20*
2. a. They are five pounds each.
   b. They are ten pounds each. *(Suez 20*
3. a. Do you have any cherry pies ?
   b. Do you have any apple pies ? *(Assiut - Sedfa 2018 / Giza - Al Omraneyah 20*
4. a. What kinds of juice do you have ?
   b. What kinds of pies do you have ? *(Cairo 20*

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Ahmed : Good morning. What kinds of pies do you have ?
Basem : We have lemon, (1) .... and apple pies.
Ahmed : How (2) .... are the apple pies ?
Basem : They're (3) .... pounds each.
Ahmed : Okay. May I (4) .... one ?
Basem : Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

(Menia 2015 / El Basateen and Dar El-Salam 20

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The car is very .... It costs a lot of money. *(Cairo 2020 / Menia - Deir Mawas 202*
   a. expensive b. high c. bad d. cheap
2. The apple pies are ten pounds .... (امتحان مجمع الإسكندرية – المنتزه ٢٠٢١)
   a. one b. each c. some d. once
3. SB I'll get a / an .... pie for you. It's delicious.
   a. fat b. bad c. fresh d. old

4. Does she have .... chocolate chip cookies?
   a. any b. an c. each d. once
5. How .... kinds of pies did you buy ?
   a. long b. much c. many d. often
6. What .... of pies do you have today ?
   a. long b. colour c. kinds d. time
7. We can buy bread and cookies .... the bakery.
   a. of b. on c. at d. next
8. .... are the peach pies ? - Five pounds each.
   a. How many b. What kind c. How long d. How much

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"At the bakery"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

(New Cairo 2019)

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. of - soup - out - **We** - chicken - are. *(Menofia - Shibin El Kom 2020)*

....

2. pies - **Does** - apple - she - have ? *(Cairo - El Shrouk 2020)*

....

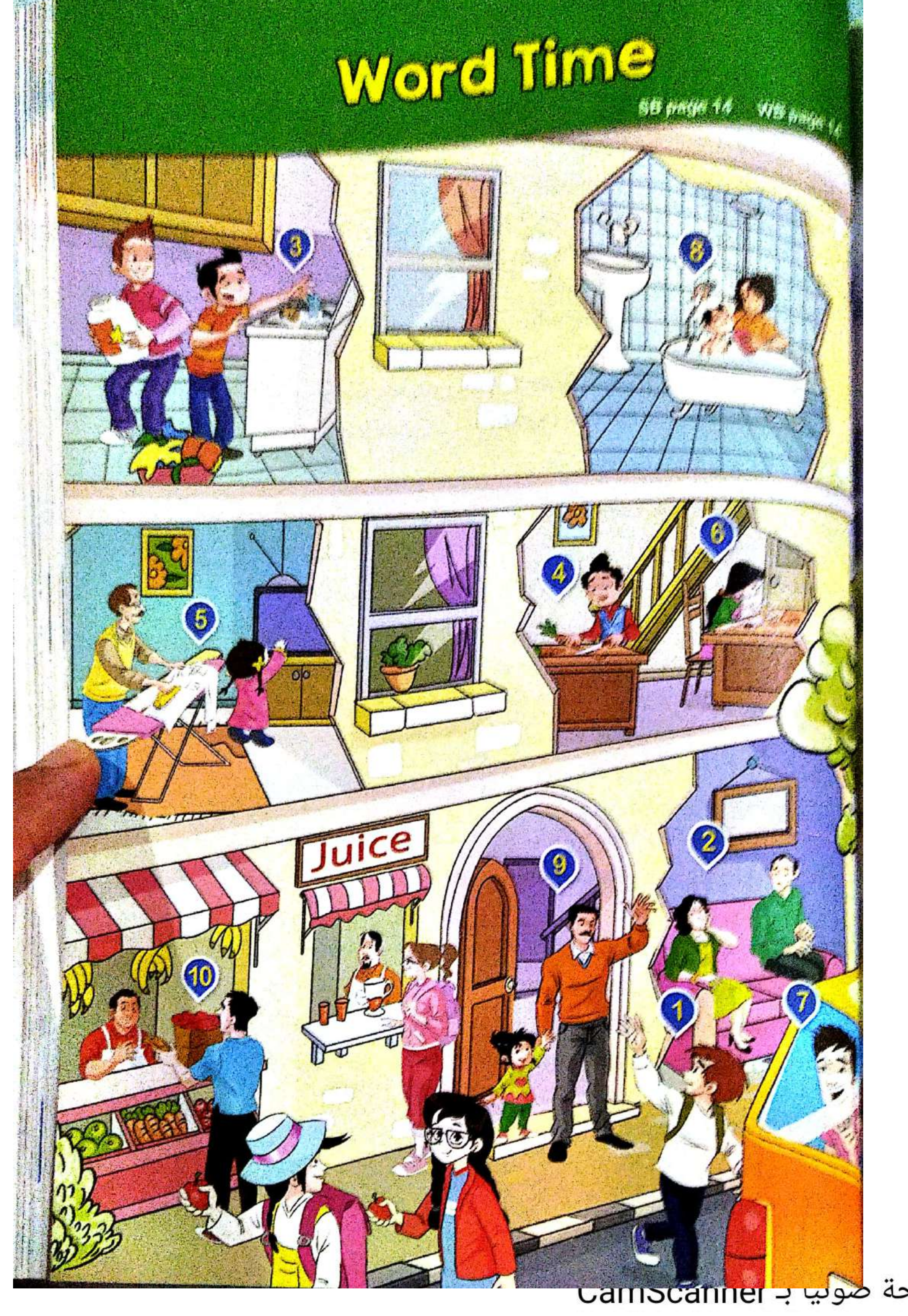
6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Can I have a chocolate cake please *(Suez 2015)*

....

2. I ll get a fresh pie for Adel

....



Word Time
SB page 14
3
8
6
4
5
Juice
2
9
10
1
7



Daily activities
go to the dentist
do the laundry
iron a shirt
slice fruit
take a bus
wash my hair
stay home
buy groceries
(laundry)

Key Vocabulary

beside	hungry
so	shop assistant
big	mine
mouse	grocer
apple juice	grocer's
medium	grocery (ies)

Notes

- I'm so hungry.
- I think so.

(adj) + er + than

Ex : Fady is taller than Omar.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	**Past** ماضي	**Present** مضارع	**Past** ماضي
walk يمشي	walked	go يذهب	went
iron يكوي	ironed	buy يشتري	bought
chop يقطع	chopped	know يعرف	knew
slice يقطع إلى شرائح	sliced	take يأخذ	took
stay يبقى / يمكث	stayed	do يفعل / يقوم بـ	did
wash يغسل	washed		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. on the pavement	على الرصيف
2. I don't know.	لا أعرف
3. It's two pounds.	إنه بجنيهين
4. Here you are.	تفضل ما تريد
5. You can have mine.	يمكنك أن تأخذ ما لدي / ما أمتلك

B Point and say the words. اشر الى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

C Listen and point. استمع واشر الى المتحدثين.

Kareem : Was there a mouse beside that tree?

Friend : Where?

Kareem : Beside that tree, on the pavement.

Friend : I don't know.



Girl : Hi, Mr Adam. How much is a medium apple juice?

Shop assistant : It's two pounds.

Girl : Great! I'll take one, please.

Shop assistant : Here you are.



Mona : Look! My apple is bigger than your apple.

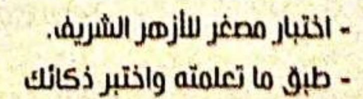
Friend : But I'm so hungry.

Mona : Here. You can have mine.

Friend : Thanks!







Remember

WB page 14

I	am	
He - She - It	is	going to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)
You - They - We	are	

* I'm going to take a bus at 7 : 10.
* He's going to iron a shirt at 12 : 15.
* They're going to buy groceries at 10 : 30.

• تستخدم للتعبير عن النية أو التخطيط لعمل شئ فى المستقبل.
• تستخدم at قبل الساعة.

• للتعبير عن الأنشطة التى تحب القيام بها :

I / you / we / They like	to +	(inf.) مصدر الفعل
He / she / It likes		

ex. She likes to iron a shirt.

• للتعبير عن الأنشطة التى لاتحب القيام بها :

I / you / we / They don't	like to +	(inf.) مصدر الفعل
He / she / It doesn't		

ex. She doesn't like to slice fruit.

Writing Skills



★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

• اجابة كل الموضوعات الإنشائية.

• How to write تمكنك من مهارة الكتابة بطريقة مبتكرة فى نهاية كل وحدة.



General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother stayed ...... as it was a holiday.
   a. work b. office c. home d. park
2. My mother ...... the laundry. (Cairo - El Marg 2018)
   a. diced b. chopped c. did d. fed
3. Please, ... these vegetables to make a salad.
   a. iron b. do c. wash d. chop
   (Cairo - Mataria 2018 / Kafr El Sheikh - Al Hamol 2018)
4. I am going to the ...... as I have a toothache.
   a. supermarket b. dentist c. grocer d. farmer
   (Sohag 2016 / The New Valley 2016 / Aswan 2016)
5. I am going to ...... a bus to school at 7 a.m.
   a. taking b. takes c. took d. take
6. My apple is ...... than your apple.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
7. Was there a mouse beside ...... tree?
   a. that b. these c. those d. them
8. We should walk ...... the pavement.
   a. in b. on c. next d. under

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. school - restaurant - library - coffee (Sohag - Gehaina 2018) (......)
2. ironed - walked - washed - took (Giza 2016) (......)
3. doctor - baker - grocer - school (Fayoum 2018) (......)
4. drop - behind - beside - above (Cairo 2017) (......)
5. tomatoes - potatoes - juice - beans (......)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Ahmed. I live with my family in [illegible]. My mother always gets up early. She makes breakfast at seven o'clock. We usually have eggs, cheese, jam and bread.

In the afternoon, my mother cooks lunch. I help her in the kitchen. I can chop vegetables, slice fruit and do the laundry. I go with her to the supermarket to buy groceries. I love my family very much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed's mother makes .... in the morning.
   a. dinner   b. snack   c. breakfast   d. lunch
2. Ahmed helps his mother in the ....
   a. kitchen   b. school   c. office   d. library

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do they have for breakfast ?

....

4. What can Ahmed do ?

....

([illegible])

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. [illegible] there - a mouse - tree - that - **Was** - beside ?

....

2. [illegible] a shirt - iron - **She** - doesn't - like to.

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i ll take one, please.

....

2. did Heba and rodina take the bus ?

....

Focus & Practice Time

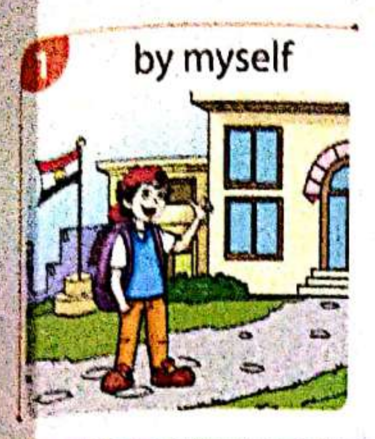
SB pages 15&16   WB pages 15&16



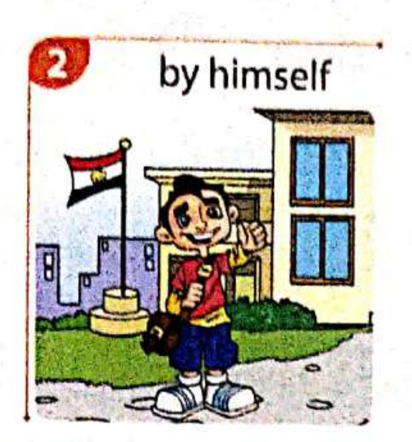
Focus Time

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1 by myself



2 by himself



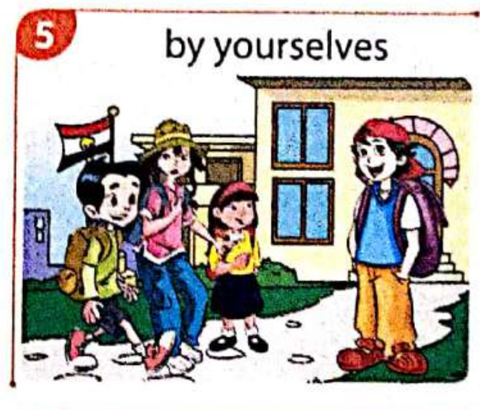
3 by herself



4 by yourself



5 by yourselves



6 by themselves



7 by ourselves



تصريف الأفعال التالية :

walk → walked | go → went | do → did | chop → chopped | iron → iro...
slice → sliced | take → took | wash → washed | stay → stayed | buy → bou...

B Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Affirmative	Negative
I ironed a shirt by myself.	I didn't iron a shirt by myse...





شاهد وتعلم

1 Emphatic pronouns

١. ضمائر التوكيد

يعود ضمير التوكيد على المتكلم أو الفاعل فى الجملة.

ex. I chopped the vegetables by **myself**.

تستخدم (ضمائر التوكيد) للتأكيد على أن الشخص أدى العمل بنفسه.

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (by) قبل ضمير التوكيد.

لاحظ أن (ضمائر التأكيد) تأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Emphatic pronouns ضمائر التوكيد
I	by myself بنفسى (بمفردى)
He	by himself بنفسه (بمفرده)
She	by herself بنفسها (بمفردها)

It	by itself بنفسه (بمفرده) بنفسها (بمفردها) (غير عاقل)	
You (مفرد)	by yourself بنفسك (بمفردك)	
You (جمع)	by yourselves بأنفسكم (بمفردكم)	
We	by ourselves بأنفسنا (بمفردنا)	
They	by themselves بأنفسهم (بمفردهم)	

2 The Past Simple Tense ٢. زمن الماضى البسيط

1 Formation التكوين

★ يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل كالاتى :



▸ **Regular verbs** الفعل المنتظم + (ed) أو (d) أو (ied)

ied	d	ed
تضاف للافعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها (حرف ساكن) بعد حذف (y).	تضاف لمعظم الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e).	تضاف لمعظم الأفعال المنتظمة.
study → studied	slice → sliced	walk → walked

◂ لاحظ أن التصريف الثانى للفعل (play) هو (played) ، لا يتم حذف (y) لانها سبقت بحرف متحرك وليس ساكن.

Irregular verbs التصريف الثانى للفعل الغير منتظم

buy	bought
get	got
take	took

التصريف الثانى للأفعال غير المنتظمة ليس له قاعدة ثابتة لذلك يحفظ كما هو.

2 Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى.

Key words	كلمات دالة
yesterday	أمس
last (week-month...)	الماضى
فترة زمنية + ago	منذ
once	ذات مرة
in the past	فى الماضى
in + سنة ماضية	فى عام
one day	ذات يوم

وجود هذه الكلمات فى الجملة دليل على أن زمنها ماضى بسيط.

ex. I ironed my shirt yesterday.

3 Expressing activities in the past :

التعبير عن انشطة فى زمن «الماضى البسيط».

Affirmative الإثبات

I / You /we /They / He /she /It + التصريف الثانى للفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex. I sliced fruit by myself.

Negative النفى

I / You /we /They / He /she /It + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex. I didn't slice fruit by myself.

Exercise on Language Focus

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He didn't drive a sports car by .... (امتحان مجمع الأقصر ٢٠٢١)
   a. himself b. herself c. myself d. itself
2. Hani and I did the laundry by .... (Gharbia - El Santaa 2019)
   a. herself b. ourselves c. themselves d. himself
3. Yesterday, they .... a bus by themselves.
   a. take b. takes c. took d. taking
4. Hamed walked to school .... himself.
   a. from b. by c. of d. under
5. .... go to the dentist by ourselves. (Cairo - Helwan 2020)
   a. He b. She c. Me d. We
6. They .... football last Friday.
   a. playing b. plays c. played d. play
7. I always do it by .... (Kafr El-Sheikh 2017)
   a. himself b. herself c. myself d. yourself
8. She chopped vegetables by .... (Beni Suef 2018)
   a. yourself b. herself c. myself d. himself
9. You didn't .... your hair by yourself. (Cairo - Helwan 2020)
   a. washed b. washing c. wash d. washes

C Look at page (14). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة فى كتاب الطالب صفحة (١٤) ثم استمع وأشر.

1. She sliced fruit by herself.
2. She didn't wash her hair by herself.
3. They took a bus by themselves.

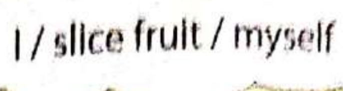
Practice Time



A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

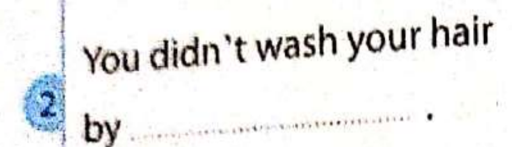
You walked to school by yourselves.





1. I sliced fruit by myself.

You / wash your hair / yourself





2. You didn't wash your hair by ………………… .

He / buy groceries / himself

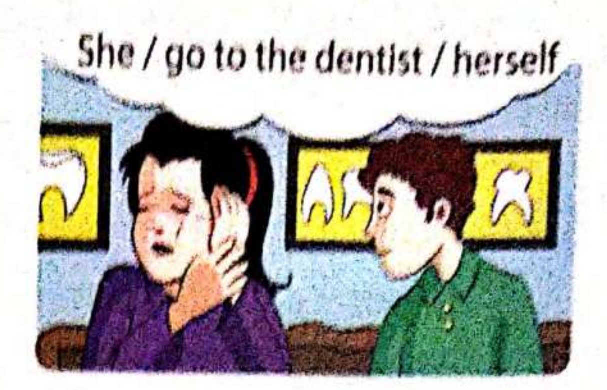
3. ……………………………………
   …………………………………… .

We / take a bus / ourselves



4. We took a bus by ………………… .

5 She didn't go to the dentist by herself.



6 ....
....



7 They did the laundry by ....
....



8 She didn't stay home ....
....



B Look at page (14). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (١٤) فى كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We didn't go to the dentist .... ourselves.
   a. from b. in c. by d. of
2. Where .... she go yesterday ? *(Beheira - Rasheed 2019)*
   a. do b. did c. does d. doing
3. SB I .... home by myself.
   a. took b. stayed c. did d. sliced
4. He .... his hair by himself last week.
   a. washed b. chopped c. took d. stayed
5. She bought bread by .... *(Beni Suef - Naser 2020)*
   a. himself b. herself c. myself d. itself
6. WB She didn't .... groceries by herself.
   a. stay b. wash c. chop d. buy
7. Heba .... her new dress.
   a. went b. did c. ironed d. sliced
8. I walked to school by .... *(Dakahlia - Dekernes 2020)*
   a. himself b. myself c. yourselves d. ourselves

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bought - listen - went - forgot *(Gharbia 2017)* (..................)
2. walk - stay - iron - pie (..................)
3. myself - herself - it - themselves *(Al-Azhar / Tanta 2016)* (..................)
4. teacher - doctor - slice - farmer *(Cairo - El-Basateen and El-Salam 2018)* (..................)
5. train - bus - hair - taxi *(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)* (..................)

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your holiday"



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Beni Sueif 2019)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. do - **Did** - himself - the laundry - he - by ? *(Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)*

....

2. myself - my - I - dress - by - ironed. *(Giza 2017)*

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. No she didn t go to the dentist.

....

2. did Ayman and Samy slice fruit by themselves

....



Quick Look

راجع منهجك فى ساعة واحدة

الزع البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

Reading & Your Time

SB pages 17&18 WB pages 17&18

Key Vocabulary

list	قائمة	groceries	البقالة
grocery list	قائمة البقالة	trolley	عربة يد لنقل الحقائب أو المشتريات
money	نقود	basket	سلة
problem	مشكلة	checkout	مكان دفع الحساب
grocer	بقال	checkout line	طابور دفع الحساب

Notes

١. نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (في / داخل) مع كلمة (trolley)، (basket).

- I put the groceries in a trolley.

٢. للتعبير عن الموافقة على شئ ما نستخدم:

- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة.

Active Vocabulary

table	منضدة	pay for	يدفع لـ ...
line	صف/طابور	run back to	يعود مسرعًا إلى
go home	يذهب للمنزل	arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)
supermarket	متجر	by the door	بجانب الباب
forget	ينسى	dentist	طبيب أسنان
remember	يتذكر	then	ثم
for me	لأجلي	toothache	ألم أسنان
walk to	يمشي إلى	bookstore	مكتبة لبيع الكتب

Notes

١. تستخدم (by) بمعنى (بجوار / بالقرب من) إذا جاء بعدها مكان.

- by the window
- by the door

٢. يستخدم حرف الجر (to) بمعنى (إلى) مع :

- run back to يعود إلى
- go to يذهب إلى
- walk to يمشي إلى

بينما لا نستخدم (to) قبل كلمة (home).

- I go home at 6 o'clock.

٣. مكان كبير (دولة أو مدينة) + arrive in

٤. مكان صغير (مدرسة - مستشفى) + arrive at

٥. ينطق حرفي (ch) في كلمة (toothache) مثل صوت حرف (k).

Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة							
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
put	يضع	put		get	يحصل على	got	
pay	يدفع	paid		forget	ينسى	forgot	
say	يقول	said		leave	يترك / يغادر	left	

Note

* تستخدم (for) مع (pay) بمعنى (يدفع ثمنًا لشيء ما).

- pay for the groceries

- يدفع ثمن البقالة

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He puts the groceries in the .... *(Alexandria 2020)*
   a. pen b. trolley c. table d. book
2. Adel went to the .... to pay for the groceries.
   a. check in b. checkout c. list d. doctor
3. Huda arrived .... school at 8:00 a.m.
   a. at b. in c. on d. to
4. Mona ran .... to the supermarket.
   a. book b. back c. door d. go

Reading Time

Ramy Forgot! *SB page 17*

Introduction : مقدمة

"Ramy Forgot!" is a passage about one of Ramy's daily activities. His mother asked him to go to the supermarket to buy groceries.

" رامى نسى" هى فقرة عن إحدى أنشطة رامى اليومية. طلبت منه والدته الذهاب إلى المتجر (السوبر ماركت) ليشترى البقالة.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Ramy's mother wanted him to go to the supermarket.

١. أرادت والدة رامى منه أن يذهب إلى السوبر ماركت.

2. Mum put a grocery list and some money on the table by the door.

٢. وضعت الأم قائمة المشتريات وبعض المال على المنضدة بجوار الباب.

3. Ramy went to the supermarket to buy groceries.

٣. ذهب رامى إلى السوبر ماركت لشراء البقالة.

A Listen and read along. استمع واقرأ

Ramy Forgot !

"Ramy", said his mother, "Will you go to the supermarket [1] for me, please?" She put a grocery list [2] and some money on the table by the door.



"No problem [3], Mum," said Ramy. Ramy arrived at [4] the supermarket. "Oh, no!" , Ramy said. "I forgot [5] the list!" He went home and got the list.Then he ran back to [6] the supermarket. Ramy put the groceries in the trolley [7]. Then he went to the checkout [8].



"Oh, no!" he said. "I forgot the money!" He ran home, got the money, and ran back to the supermarket. Then he paid for [9] the groceries and went home.

"Hi, Ramy," said his mother. "Where are the groceries?"

"Oh, no!" he said. " I left them at the supermarket!"

Check Vocabulary

(1) متجر
(2) قائمة البقالة
(3) لا توجد مشكلة
(4) وصل إلى
(5) نسى
(6) جرى عائدًا إلى
(7) عربة تُجَرّ باليد تنقل الحقائب أو المشتريات
(8) مكان دفع الحساب
(9) دفع ثمن لـ

B Listen and circle True or False.

استمع وضع دائرة حول (**True**) أو (**False**)

1. Ramy went to the supermarket with his mother. True False
2. Ramy ran to the bookstore. True False

3. Ramy forgot the money. True False
4. Ramy didn't pay for the groceries. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة

1. Where did Ramy go ?

....

2. Who wanted Ramy to go ?

....

3. What did Ramy leave at the supermarket ?

He left the groceries at the supermarket.

4. Why did Ramy go back home many times ?

....

Sally Remembered !

WB page 17

Introduction : مقدمة

"Sally Remembered !" is a passage about one of Sally's daily activities. Her father asked her to go to the supermarket to buy groceries.

"سالى تذكرت" هى فقرة عن إحدى أنشطة سالى اليومية. والدها طلب منها الذهاب إلى المتجر لتشترى البقالة.

اقرأ النص فى صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Did you do the laundry on Tuesday ?

....

2. Did you wash your hair this morning ?

....

3. Will you eat breakfast by yourself tomorrow ?

4. Are you going to walk to school by yourself tomorrow ?

5. Can you chop vegetables by yourself ?

B Pair work. What can you do by yourself ? Write. Then ask your partner.

الثنائي: اكتب ماذا تستطيع أن تفعل بنفسك، ثم اسأل صديقك ماذا يستطيع أن يفعل بنفسه.

You	Your Partner
1. I can do the laundry by myself.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.

C Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache.
   a. dentist b. supermarket c. grocer d. nurse
2. I stayed .... on Friday as it was a holiday.
   a. park b. office c. work d. home
3. I .... going to wash my hair tomorrow.
   a. do b. is c. am d. are
4. I .... take the bus as I go on foot.
   a. do b. don't c. does d. doesn't
5. I buy my things .... myself.
   a. by b. as c. with d. at



General
Exercises
Reading & Your Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. museum - hotel - restaurant - test *(Menia - Deir Mawas 2020)* (............)
2. train - trolley - car - bus *(Kafr El-Shiekh - Sidi Salim 2019)* (............)
3. he - yourself - she - we *(Cairo - West Cairo 2018)* (............)
4. went - bought - play - said *(Qena - Farshot 2020)* (............)
5. Monday - Friday - Sally - Tuesday *(Port Said - South 2018)* (............)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at the grocery .... to buy what you need.
   a. trolley b. supermarket c. list d. checkout
   (Alexandria - Agami 2020)
2. She .... groceries yesterday. *(Gharbia - Tanta 2020)*
   a. buy b. bought c. buys d. buying
3. I'll .... for the tickets. *(Suez 2014)*
   a. pays b. paying c. pay d. paid
4. A supermarket is a big store where you can .... groceries.
   a. buy b. buying c. bought d. buys
5. He went to the .... to pay money.
   a. list b. door c. trolley d. checkout
6. A .... is used for carrying things in a supermarket.
   a. trolley b. car c. taxi d. bin
   (The Red Sea 2014)
7. Ali ran .... to the supermarket because he forgot some groceries.
   a. in b. of c. back d. from
8. I'm going to buy some .... from the supermarket.
   a. museum b. train c. groceries d. tree
   (امتحان مجمع الغربية ٢٠٢١)

3 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ahmed is an assistant at Egypt supermarket. He saw a boy. The boy ran into the store. He stopped and said, " Oh, no! I forgot the list!" He ran out. Then, the boy ran back into the supermarket. He had the list in his hand. He got a trolley and put the groceries in it. He came to Ahmed's checkout. The boy paid for the groceries and went home. He left his trolley with the groceries at the supermarket. The boy's mother went to the supermarket with him. Ahmed showed her the trolley. She took it and went back home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boy got a .... and put the groceries in it.

   a. pot b. trolley c. bag d. basket

2. Ahmed works at Egypt ....

   a. school b. factory c. supermarket d. hospital

B. Answer the following:

3. Who showed the boy's mother the trolley ?

   ....

4. What did the boy forget ?

   ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. list - Ramy - the - forget - **Did** ? *(Beni Suef 2016)*

   ....

2. left - the groceries - at - the supermarket - **I** . *(Assiut - El-Badary 2019)*

   ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. WB How did asmaa go to Aswan

   ....

2. Yes Ali went there alone

   ....



How to write

كيف تكتب

Unit 3

Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التى تعمل على إسترجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

1. I ironed a shirt by myself.
2. He sliced fruit by himself.
3. They didn't walk to school by themselves.
4. We didn't stay at home by ourselves.

Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

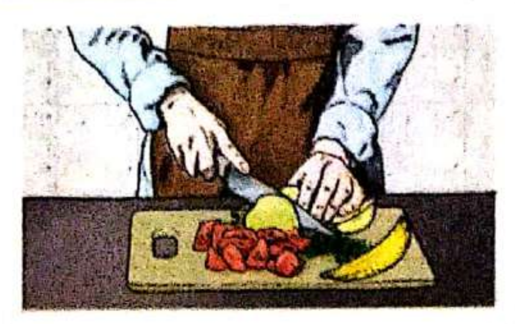
يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

fruit - bought - chopped



1. He .... groceries by himself.



2. She sliced .... by herself.

Step 3 Grammar practice

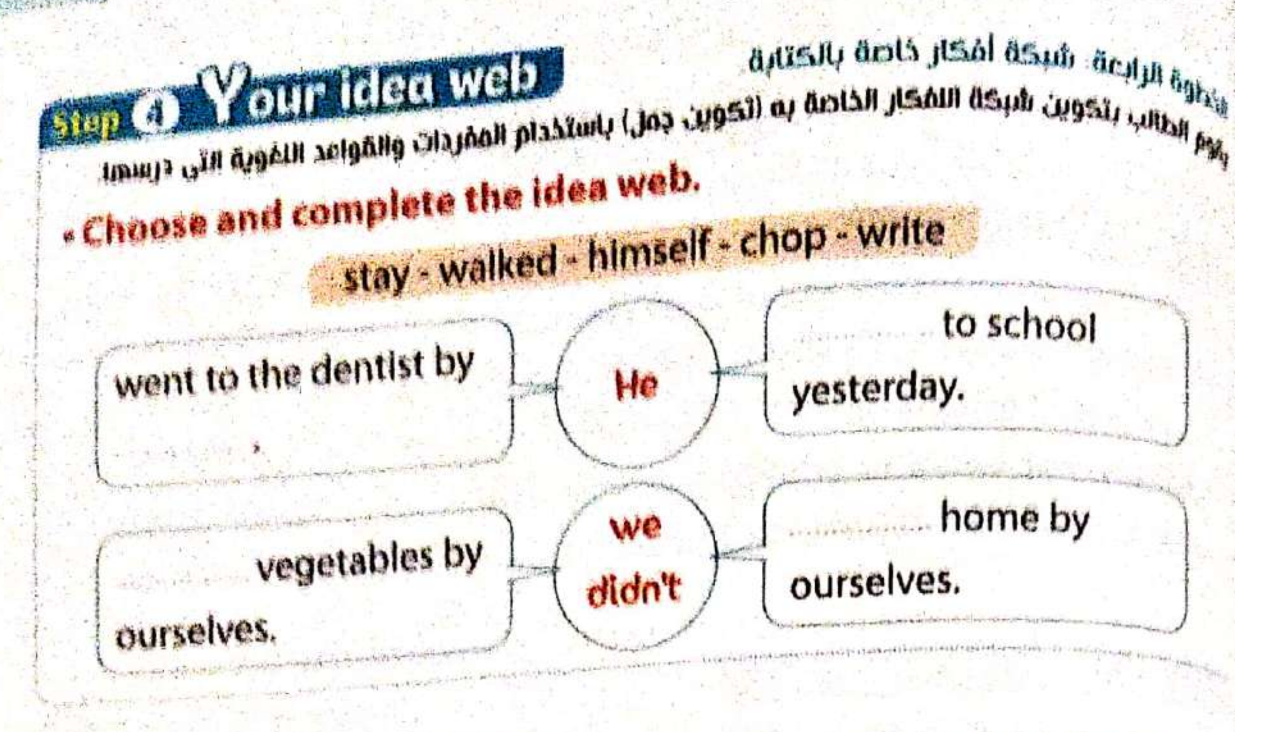
الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word :

stayed - stay - yourself

1. You washed your hair by ....
2. I didn't .... home by myself.



Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• **Read, cut and stick.**

"At the bakery"

Cut & Paste here from page 293

"My holiday"

Cut & Paste here from page 293

Writing checklist

- [ ] 1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
- [ ] 2. My sentences end with a full stop.
- [ ] 3. My words are in the correct order.



تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. Ramy – a bus – himself – took – by.
2. a fresh – I – get – pie – for you – will.

	فاعل	فعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2		will get	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. list, – **Don't** – Salma – forget – the.
2. laundry – yourself – **Do** – by– the.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. **Where** – go – Ramy – did ?
2. of pies – have – today – **What kinds** – you – do ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1					
2	What kinds of pies				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. **Can** – you – help – I ?
2. you – **Did** – do – laundry – the ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1		I		
2				



Test your skills

Unit 3

If you get ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page

My Spelling Test

Look and write.

1. ....



2. ....



3. ....



4. ....



1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation. Listen and tick (✓).

استمع إلى المحادثة ثم استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Sorry, we are out of cherry.
   - ◯ Do you have any cherry pies?
   - ◯ Do you have any apple pies?

2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة

2. Which word is correct?

   I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache.
   - ◯ grocer
   - ◯ dentist

3 Writing skill

3. Write two sentences about the daily activities.

   اكتب جملتين عن الأنشطة اليومية

   ....

   ....





Review on Unit 3

1. Conversation

Baker : Good morning. Can I help you ?

Customer : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?

Baker : We have lemon, peach and apple.

Customer : Do you have any cherry pies ?

Baker : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

Customer : How much are they ?

Baker : They're ten pounds each.

Customer : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies ?

Baker : They're five pounds each.

Customer : Okay. I'll take one.

Baker : Great ! I'll get a fresh pie for you.

2. Vocabulary

walk to school — يمشى إلى المدرسة

do the laundry — يغسل الملابس

iron a shirt — يكوى قميص

take a bus — يأخذ (يستقل) أتوبيس

stay home — يمكث بالمنزل

go to the dentist — يذهب لطبيب الأسنان

chop vegetables — يقطع الخضروات

slice fruit — يقطع الفاكهة إلى شرائح

wash my hair — أغسل شعرى

buy groceries — يشترى البقالة

3. Language Focus

* **Emphatic pronouns**

ضمائر توكيد

يعود ضمير التوكيد على المتكلم أو الفاعل فى الجملة وإذا وضعت by قبله فهى للتأكيد.

- I chopped the vegetables by myself.
- We did the laundry by ourselves.
- Hoda sliced the fruit by herself.

ضمير الفاعل	ضمير التوكيد
I	myself
He	himself
She	herself
It	itself
You (مفرد)	yourself
You (جمع)	yourselves
We	ourselves
They	themselves

Workbook On Conversation Time page 13

A. Number the sentences in the correct order:

رقم الجمل بالترتيب الصحيح :

4 Sorry. We're out of cherry.

6 They're five pounds each.

2 We have lemon and peach.

5 How much are the peach pies ?

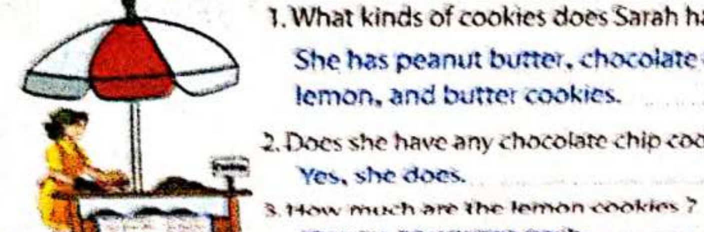
1 What kinds of pies do you have today ?

8 Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.

3 Do you have any cherry pies ?

7 Okay. I'll take one.

B. Read the question. Write the answer : اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة :



1. What kinds of cookies does Sarah have ?
   She has peanut butter, chocolate chip, lemon, and butter cookies.
2. Does she have any chocolate chip cookies ?
   Yes, she does.
3. How much are the lemon cookies ?

Workbook On Word Time page 14

A. Look and write: انظر واكتب :

Hisham's Morning



1. He's going to wash his hair at 7:15.
2. He's going to iron a shirt at 8:10.
3. He's going to buy groceries at 9:20.
4. He's going to chop vegetables at 10:30.
5. He's going to slice fruit at 10:40.
6. He's going to do the laundry at 11:25.

B. Look and write. انظر واكتب.

1. She likes to do the laundry.
   She doesn't like to iron a shirt.
2. They like to chop vegetables.
   They don't like to slice fruit.
3. She likes to stay home.

Workbook On Focus Time , page 15.

A. Read and write: : اقرأ واكتب

1. she → herself
2. he → ....
3. I → ....
4. they → ....
5. we → ....
6. you → .... or ....

B. Read and write True or False: :(False) أو (True) اقرأ واكتب

1. He walked to school by himself. False
2. He washed his hair by himself. True
3. He didn't go to the dentist by himself. True
4. He didn't buy groceries by himself. False



C. What did they do ? Look and write. ماذا فعلوا ؟ انظر واكتب.

1. I sliced fruit by myself.
2. We bought groceries by ourselves.
3. You ironed a shirt by yourself.
4. You took a bus by yourself.

Workbook On Practice Time , page 15.

A. Read and write: : اقرأ واكتب

Today, I'm going to...		On Sunday, I ...
1. buy groceries	→	bought groceries
2. take a bus	→	took a bus
3. go to the dentist	→	went to the dentist
4. chop vegetables	→	chopped vegetables
5. walk to school	→	walked to school
6. slice fruit	→	sliced fruit
7. iron a shirt	→	ironed a shirt
8. wash my hair	→	washed my hair

B. Look and write: : انظر واكتب

1. ✓ She did the laundry by herself.
   ✗ She didn't stay home by herself.
2. ✓ He chopped vegetables by himself.
   ✗ He didn't take a bus by himself.
3. ✓ They washed their hair by themselves.
   ✗ They didn't stay home by themselves.

Workbook On Reading Time page 17

A. Read. Then number the pictures in the correct order:

اقرأ ثم رقم الصور بالترتيب الصحيح

Sally Remembered !

"Sally," said her father, "Will you go to the supermarket for me, please ?" "No problem, Dad," said Sally. She wrote the grocery list and took the money with her. She walked to the supermarket. Sally put the groceries in the basket. Then she went to the checkout line. She went back home in a short time.













B. Read the question. Write the answer.

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة

1. What did Sally write ?

2. Why did Sally go to the supermarket ?

3. Where did Sally put the groceries ?

Workbook On Your Time page 18

A. Draw some pies. Write a price for each pie. Then answer the questions:

ارسم بعض الفطائر. اكتب سعر كل فطيرة عليها ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

Answers will vary.

1. How many kinds of pies did you draw ?
2. Which one is your favourite ?
3. How much do your pies cost ?

B. Answer the questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة :

Answers will vary.

1. Can you drive a car by yourself ? No, I can't.
2. Can you bake cookies by yourself ?
3. Can you use a computer by yourself ?
4. Can you cook breakfast by yourself ?
5. Can you ride a bus by yourself ?

C. Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات ترقيم الجمل التالية :

1. asmaa went to alexandria last friday

   Asmaa went to Alexandria last Friday.

2. how did asmaa go to aswan

   How did Asmaa go to Aswan ?

Exam Language Bank



1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة

cherry	كرز	slice fruit	يقطع الفاكهة لشرائح
expensive	غالي الثمن	do the laundry	يقوم بغسيل الملابس
fresh	طازج	buy groceries	يشتري البقالة
out of	نفد	list	قائمة
go to the dentist	يذهب لطبيب الأسنان	check out	يدفع الحساب
iron a shirt	يكوي قميص	trolley	عربة يد لنقل المشتريات
stay home	يمكث بالمنزل	problem	مشكلة



2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة

1. I ironed a shirt by myself.
2. I didn't iron a shirt by myself.
3. We did the laundry by ourselves.
4. She sliced fruit by herself.

Check Language



3. Language functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة

Questions	Answers
- What kinds of pies do you have today?	- We have lemon, peach and apple pies.
- Do you have any cherry pies?	- Sorry, we're out of cherry.
- How much are they?	- They're ten pounds each.
- Can I help you?	- Yes, please.

Test 5 on Unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات





1 Listen and circle: استمع الى معلمك وضع دائرة.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. a. A cherry pie. *(Menia - Abo Korkas 2020)*
   b. A lemon pie.
2. a. We have lemon, peach and apple. *(Beni Suef 2014)*
   b. We have green, yellow and black.
3. a. How much are the apple pies ? *(Gharbia 2017)*
   b. How much are the loaves ?
4. a. Can you iron a shirt by yourself ? *(Fayoum 2016)*
   b. Can you ride a bike by yourself ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Baker : Good morning. Can I (1) .... you ?
Nada : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?
Baker : We have lemon, cherry and (2) .... pies.
Nada : How (3) .... is the lemon pie ?
Baker : It's five pounds.
Nada : Okay, I will (4) .... one. *(Qena 2017)*

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shady and I cleaned the room by .... (امتحان مجمع قليوبية ٢٠٢١)
   a. himself b. myself c. ourselves d. themselves
2. Do the laundry by ....
   (Beni Suef - Somosta 2018 / Beheira-Etay Al-Baroud 2019)
   a. herself b. yourselves c. themselves d. ourselves
3. I'll get a .... pie for you.
   a. bad b. sad c. fresh d. hungry
   (امتحان مجمع أسوان ٢٠٢١)

4. Please, ... these vegetables to make a salad. *(Giza 2017)*
   a. iron b. do c. walk d. chop
5. Oh! That's .... expensive. I can't buy it. *(Ismailia 2014)*
   a. much b. to c. too d. as
6. Who will .... the laundry ? *(Suez 2014)*
   a. go b. stay c. do d. chop
7. He is going to .... his shirt to go to school. *(Cairo 2015)*
   a. iron b. tell c. sign d. turn
8. Sorry, we're .... cherry pies. *(Gharbia 2015)*
   a. out of b. in c. from d. for

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. herself - yourself - him - itself *(Qalyoubia 2020)* (..................)
2. he - she - we - blue *(Fayoum - Youssef El Sedeek 2020)* (..................)
3. Monday - holiday - Friday - Tuesday *(Beheira - Damanhour 2018)* (..................)
4. went - chopped - iron - bought *(Dakahlia - Beni Ebaid 2019)* (..................)
5. free - expensive - ready - today *(Gharbia 2017)* (..................)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

A father told his son to go to the bakery to buy some bread for breakfast. The father gave him some money. The son walked to get the bread. When he arrived there, he found that he forgot the money. The son ran back home to get the money. He put the bread in a plastic bag. Now, it is 8:00 a.m. The son is late for school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The son went to the bakery ....
   a. by bus b. by car c. on foot d. by bike
2. The son went to the bakery in the ....
   a. evening b. morning c. afternoon d. night

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the father give his son ?

....

4. Did the son put the bread in a basket ?

....

(Qalyoubia 201[illegible])

C Writing

ابل منه في نهاية الكتاب

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

Write an email to your friend Nada to tell her about your favourite pie. Your name is Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nada@yahoo.com.

To :..............................
From :..............................
Subject :..............................

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. Ramy - the - **Did** - list - forget ? *(Beheira 2017)*

....

2. stayed - Tuesday - **I** - on - home. *(Kafr El-Sheikh - El-Riad 2018)*

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. what kinds of pies do you have today *(Giza - Al-Ayat 2019)*

....

2. Yes we're out of water *(Giza 2020)*

....



Test 6 on Unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create



تنويه | يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا والحصول

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. They're ten pounds each.
   b. They're five pounds each.
2. a. They have got many apple pies.
   b. They have got five pies.
3. a. Do you have any cherry pies ?
   b. Do you have any apple pies ?
4. a. What do you have for lunch ?
   b. What do you have for dinner ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Rokaya : Good morning. Do you have (1) .... cherry pies ?

Nada : Sorry. We're (2) .... of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

Rokaya : (3) .... much are they ?

Nada : They're ten pounds (4) ....

Rokaya : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies ?

Nada : They're five pounds each.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teeth hurt. I'm going to the ....
   a. baker b. dentist c. waiter d. barber
2. Who will .... the laundry ?
   a. do b. go c. stay d. shop
3. How .... does an apple pie cost ?
   a. many b. much c. often d. old

4. I .... take the bus as I go on foot.
 a. do b. don't c. does d. doesn't
5. I buy my things .... myself.
 a. by b. as c. with d. at
6. He .... the money so he ran back home to get it.
 a. did b. went c. forgot d. arrived
7. Can you chop vegetables by .... ?
 a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. themselves
8. Ramy put the groceries in the ....
 a. book b. trolley c. door d. table

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. baker - doctor - teacher - cherry (..................)
2. milk - bread - lemonade - orange juice (..................)
3. ten - slice - four - twelve (..................)
4. chop - bought - washed - ironed (..................)
5. myself - himself - they - herself (..................)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Today is Friday. It's a holiday for all people except my mum. It's a busy day. She stays home and does a lot of activities. We help her. She does the laundry and irons shirts. She gives my father a grocery list. He goes to the supermarket to buy groceries. My sister chops vegetables and slices fruit. I feed the birds. We have lunch at home. In the evening, we watch TV.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They have lunch at ....
 a. restaurant b. school c. home d. bank
2. They .... in the evening.
 a. iron shirts b. watch TV c. do the laundry d. slice fruit

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who slices the fruit ?

....

4. Where does father go ?

....

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences.

"Supermarkets"

تجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. paid - **Who** - for - groceries - the ?

....

2. today - **We** - out of - cherry - are - pies.

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what did Ramy do on Friday

....

2. Amira and Heba can t chop vegetables

....

تنويه

تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة والملحق



Stop here!

1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students لطلاب المعاهد الأزهرية

1 Look and write a paragraph of Four sentences:

Guiding words:

bakery - cherry - prices - good



....

....

....

....

2 Punctuate the following sentence:

we should walk on the pavement mum

....

2. Use your brain, think smart ما تعلمته واختبر ذكاءك

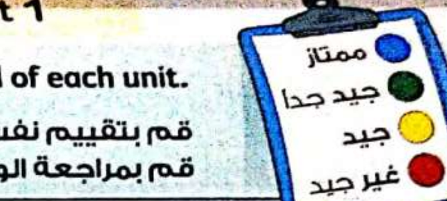
- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Kareem and I bought the groceries by ....

   a. yourselves b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself

2. Slice fruit by .... , Mona.

   a. myself b. herself c. yourself d. himself

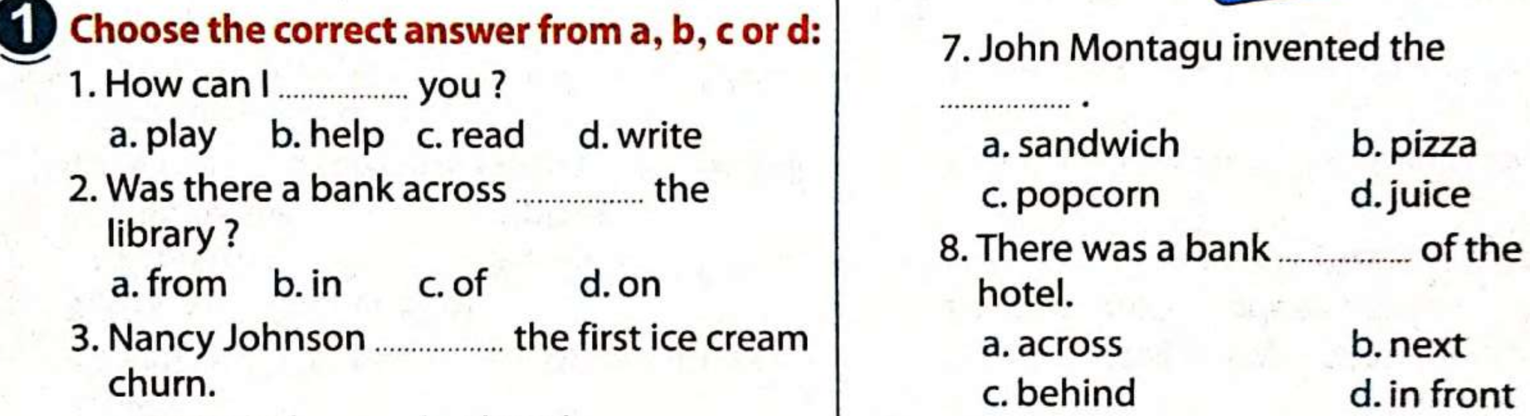


Mini-Test on Unit 1

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How can I .... you ?
   a. play b. help c. read d. write
2. Was there a bank across .... the library ?
   a. from b. in c. of d. on
3. Nancy Johnson .... the first ice cream churn.
   a. invented b. played
   c. bought d. wrote
4. .... there a library next to the hospital ?
   a. Were b. Was c. Are d. Do
5. We're open .... Fridays.
   a. in b. on c. at d. above
6. It costs two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for ....
   a. foreigners b. pupils
   c. doctors d. teachers
7. John Montagu invented the ....
   a. sandwich b. pizza
   c. popcorn d. juice
8. There was a bank .... of the hotel.
   a. across b. next
   c. behind d. in front

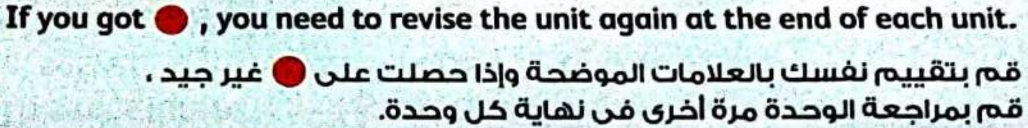
2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. does - it - **How** - cost - much ?

....

2. **There** - was - above - post office - a library - the .

....



Mini-Test on Unit 2



If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

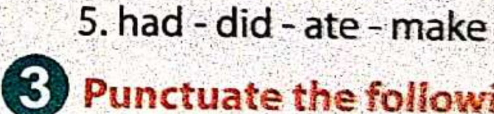
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm ready ....
   a. order b. to order
   c. ordering d. orders
2. I'm going to .... two pieces of apple pie.
   a. have b. has c. having d. had
3. Mona had two cups of ....
   a. turkey b. coffee
   c. apple pie d. pizza
4. Do you want the steak rare, ... or well done ?
   a. medium b. tall c. sad d. happy
5. She ate a .... of bread for breakfast.
   a. loaf b. cup c. glass d. bottle
6. This restaurant .... dinner.
   a. serves b. plays c. opens d. writes
7. .... cans of lemonade did she have ?
   a. How b. Where
   c. How much d. How many
8. The prices of this restaurant .... expensive.
   a. don't b. wasn't c. isn't d. aren't



2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. plate - bottle - cup - cherry (..............)
2. water - milk - coffee - apple (..............)
3. a slice of - a can of - pizza - a piece of (..............)
4. good - delicious - well done - steak (..............)
5. had - did - ate - make (..............)





3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. What s today's special, mona?
....
2. *I ll have French Fries and salad*
....

Mini-Test on Unit 3

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I sliced fruit by ....
   a. herself   b. himself
   c. myself   d. itself
2. My brother always forgets the grocery .... and money.
   a. notebook   b. list
   c. test   d. ball
3. It's .... expensive. I can't buy it.
   a. two   b. to   c. too   d. not to
4. Sorry, we're .... of cherry pies.
   a. on   b. out   c. from   d. in
5. I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache.
   a. dentist   b. grocer
   c. nurse   d. teacher
6. I stayed .... on Friday as it was a holiday.
   a. park   b. office   c. work   d. home
7. My little sister can .... vegetables.
   a. chop   b. do   c. stay   d. iron
8. I .... take the bus as I go on foot.
   a. do   b. don't
   c. does   d. doesn't

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. peach - **How** - are - pies - much - the ?

   ....

2. himself - **Hani** - goes - school - to - by.

   ....



Quiz 2 on Units 1 , 2 & 3

اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١ ، ٢ و٣)

• يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات السابقة.

Model A

Marks

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Please, ... the vegetables to make a salad.
   a. do b. make c. chop d. work
2. This restaurant .... good lunch and dinner.
   a. serves b. eats c. opens d. plays
3. They take the train at the train ....
   a. pavement b. station c. library d. bridge
4. The box is .... the desk.
   a. between b. behind c. across d. next
5. Hani and Mona did the laundry by ....
   a. himself b. ourselves c. themselves d. yourselves

Model B

Marks

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He'll take a .... of apple pie.
   a. glass b. loaf c. cup d. piece
2. Yesterday, I .... a bus to the park.
   a. take b. took c. taking d. takes
3. This park is open ....
   a. day b. week c. month d. daily
4. Does he .... a baked potato ?
   a. wants b. wanted c. want d. wanting
5. We went to the .... to see a show.
   a. theatre b. bank c. school d. hotel

UNIT 4

Visiting a Film Studio

زيارة استوديو سينمائي



- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- make a telephone call — إجراء مكالمة هاتفية
- leave a message — ترك رسالة نصية
- exchange information about the frequency of activities in the present
  - تبادل معلومات عن تكرار الأنشطة في زمن المضارع
- identify speakers in a conversation
  - التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a postcard — قراءة بطاقة بريدية

Vocabulary

- activities
  - التعرف على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة ببعض الأنشطة

Grammar

- Adverbs of frequency (always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly ever, never)
  - تعلم ظروف التكرار
- Yes / No questions with (do) and (does)
  - تعلم كيفية تكوين صيغة السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام do و does

لإتقان الوحدة :

- كراسة المحاضر المتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.
- Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.
- كراسة المحاضر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة

Conversation Time

SB page 19 WB page 19

Key Vocabulary

right now	حالًا / الآن	a film studio	استوديو تصوير (سينمائى)
be back	يعود	late	متأخر
message	رسالة		

Notes

١. يتلقى رسالة ...

take a message

- Can you take a message ?

٢. يتحدث إلى ... *** speak to +** شخص

- May I speak to Ahmed ?

٣. متأخر عن ... *** late for + (n.)** اسم

- I'll be late for lunch.

Active Vocabulary

hello	مرحبًا	number	رقم
sorry	آسف	got it	فهمت / وصلت الرسالة
Who .. ?	من (للعاقل) ... ؟	talk	يتكلم
Sure.	بالطبع / بالتأكيد.	okay	حسنًا
today	اليوم	May I .. ?	هل بإمكانى .. ؟

Notes

١. يتكلم مع / يتحدث إلى

talk to + (شخص)

- Asmaa talks to Salwa every day.

٢. ينطق حرفى (ph) فى كلمة (telephone) مثل صوت حرف (f).

٣. هل بإمكانى ... ؟

May I ... ?

May I speak to Ahmed ?

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى
call	يتصل بـ - يُدعى	called		know	يعرف	knew	
				speak	يتحدث	spoke	

Exercise on Vocabulary

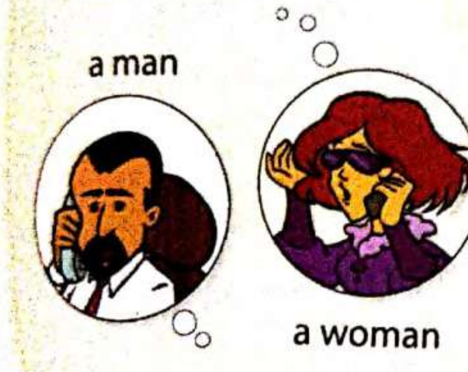
- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

1. message - yellow - blue - green *(West Fayoum 2018)* (   )
2. Who - What - home - Where *(Port Said 2017)* (   )
3. speak - sorry - know - call (   )
4. in - for - number - to (   )
5. film studio - school - today - park (   )

A telephone call مكالمة هاتفية

- **Characters** شخصيات المحادثة



- **Topic** موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is a telephone call between a man and a woman. The woman wants to talk to Ahmed. But he's not in right now. So, she leaves a message for him.

محادثة اليوم هى مكالمة تليفونية بين رجل وامرأة. تريد السيدة أن تتحدث إلى أحمد لكنه ليس موجود الآن. لذلك تترك له رسالة.

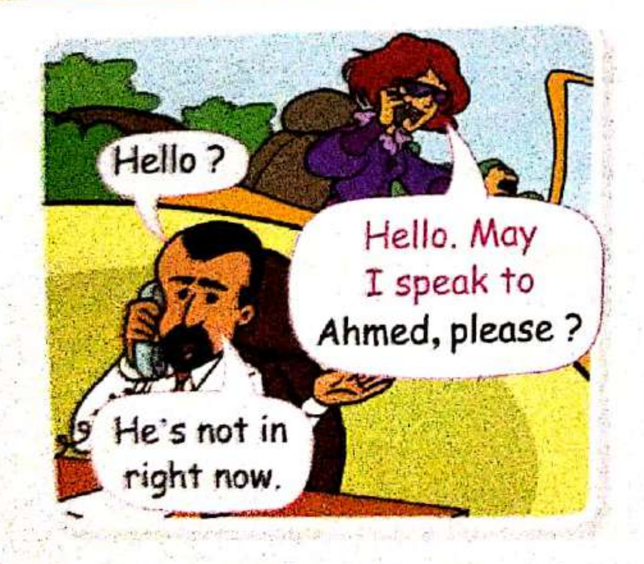
(A) Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



Man : Hello !	الرجل : مرحبًا !
Woman : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?	السيدة : مرحبًا. هل يمكننى التحدث إلى أحمد، من فضلك ؟
Man : He's not in right now.	الرجل : هو غير موجود الآن.

Woman : What time will he be back ?	السيدة : ما الوقت الذى سيعود فيه ؟
Man : I'm sorry. I don't know.	الرجل : مع الأسف، أنا لا أعرف.
Woman : Can you take a message ?	السيدة : هل يمكنك أن توصل له رسالة ؟
Man : Sure. Who's calling ?	الرجل : بالتأكيد. مَنْ المتصل ؟
Woman : This is Salwa Kamel. I'm going to be late for lunch today. I'll see him at 1:00.	السيدة : مَعَكَ سلوى كامل. أخبرهُ أننى سأتأخر عن موعد الغداء اليوم، وسوف أقابله فى تمام الساعة الواحدة.
Man : Got it. What's your number ?	الرجل : فهمت رسالتك. ما هو رقم تليفونك ؟
Woman : 35551839.	السيدة : ٣٥٥٥١٨٣٩.
Man : Okay. I'll give him your message.	الرجل : حسنًا. سوف أخبره برسالتك.
Woman : Thanks.	السيدة : شكرًا.
Man : You're welcome.	الرجل : على الرحب والسعة.

Language Functions



1

• لبدء الحوار عبر الهاتف نستخدم :

- **Hello ?**

- مرحبًا ؟

• لطلب التحدث إلى شخص ما نستخدم :

- **May I speak to** (اسم الشخص), **please ?**

- هل يمكننى أن أتحدث إلى ... من فضلك ؟

• فى حالة عدم وجود الشخص تقول :

- He's not in right now.

- ليس موجودًا الآن.



2

• للسؤال عن الوقت تستخدم :

- What time ... ? ؟ ... ما الوقت -

- What time will he be back ?

- فى أى وقت سيعود ؟

• للرد بعدم المعرفة نقول :

- I'm sorry. I don't know.

- مع الأسف، أنا لا أعرف.



3

• لطلب ترك رسالة لشخص ما عبر الهاتف نستخدم :

- Can you take a message ?

- هل يمكنك أن تتلقى رسالة ؟

• وللتعبير عن الموافقة :

- Sure. Who's calling ?

- بالتأكيد. مَن المتصل ؟



4

• عند تقديم الشخص لنفسه أو لغيره.

- This is + (اسم الشخص).

- This is Salwa Kamel.



[illegible]
Got it.

[illegible]
What's your telephone number?

[illegible]
It's ...





[illegible]
Thanks.

عند الرد على الشكر نقول
You're welcome.
على الرحب والسعة.

Exercise on Language Functions

● **Listen and circle :** استمع الى مكالمة وضع دائرة

1. a. He is at the cinema. b. He is at home.
2. a. This is Mona Ahmed. b. This is Salwa Kamel.
3. a. What time will he be back ? b. When will he be back ? *(Cairo 2017)*
4. a. May I speak to Ahmed, please ? b. Can I speak to Hany, please ? *(Menofia - Menouf 2018 / Cairo - El Shorouk 2018)*

11 Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة



General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

Asmaa : Good morning.

Amany : Good morning.

Asmaa : (1) .... I speak to Nada, please ?

Amany : She is not in (2) .... now.

Asmaa : What (3) .... will she be back ?

Amany : I'm (4) .... I don't know.

(Qena - Farshout 2020)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What's your telephone .... ? - 233055 *(Dakahlia - Met Ghamr 2020)*
   a. address b. time c. number d. day
2. My brother isn't .... right now.
   a. in b. on c. next d. of
3. What time will he .... back ? (امتحان مجمع أسوان ٢٠٢١)
   a. does b. has c. is d. be
4. I'm .... I'm late for school. *(Qalyoubia - Tokh 2020)*
   a. sorry b. late c. small d. old
5. Can you .... a message ?
   a. took b. taking c. take d. takes
6. I'm going to be .... for lunch today.
   a. good b. nice c. late d. sorry
7. .... 's calling ? - This is Amira.
   a. How b. What c. Which d. Who
8. I'll .... you my number.
   a. eat b. give c. go d. call

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Sarah was in her office yesterday. She had a telephone call from Mr Ibrahim. He wanted to speak to Mr Sameh. Mr Sameh was not in. Mr Ibrahim left him a message. He said he wanted to see Mr Sameh at 7 : 00. Sarah gave the message to Mr Sameh when he was back. So Mr Sameh called Mr Ibrahim and met him today.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ibrahim wanted to .... Mr Sameh at 7 : 00.
   a. see b. call c. leave d. speak
2. Mr Sameh was ....
   a. in the office b. not in the office
   c. calling d. there

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Mr Ibrahim leave for Mr Sameh ?

4. What did Mr Ibrahim want Sara to tell Mr Sameh ?

(Cairo - [illegible])

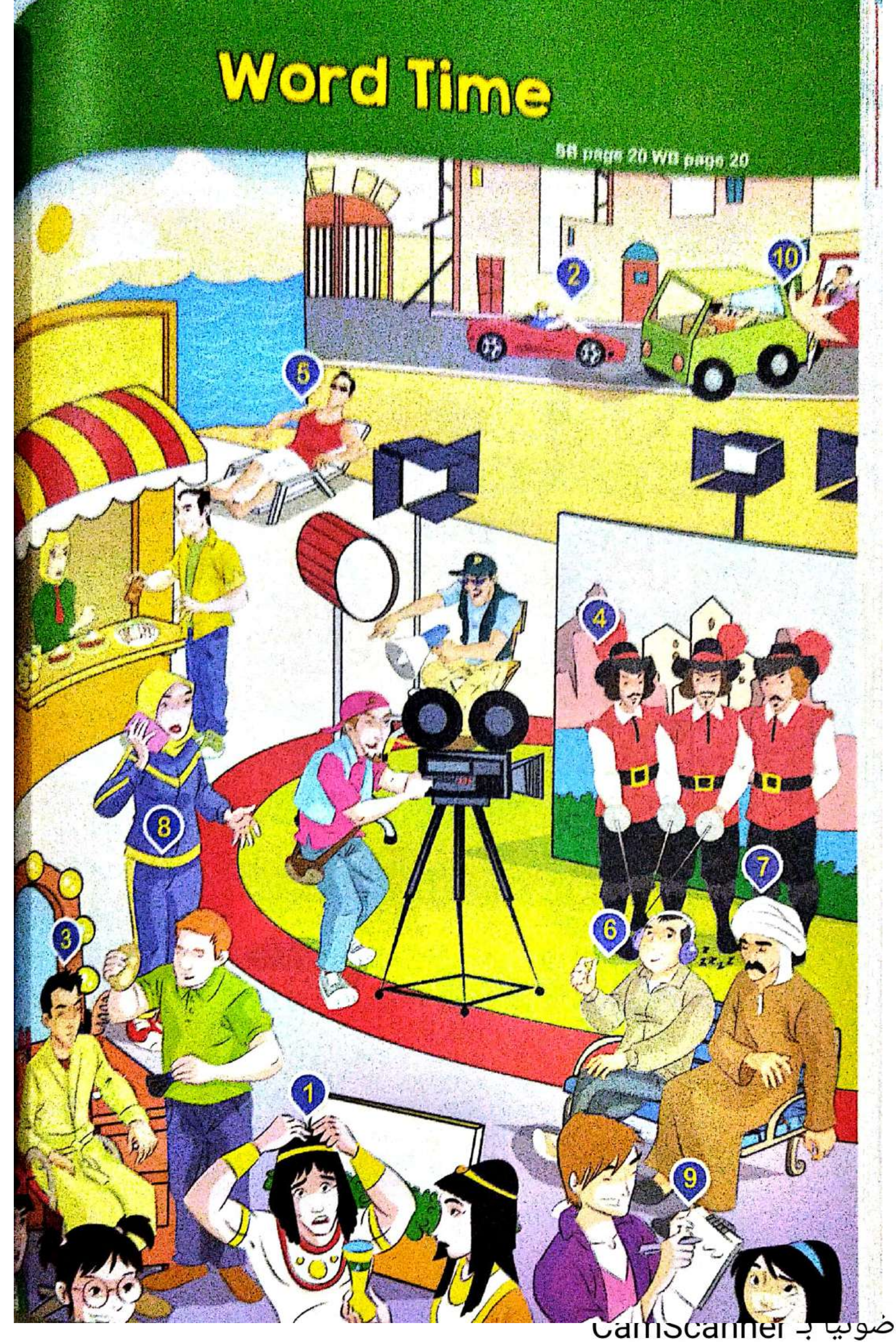
4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Phone call"

(Alex [illegible])

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. my - is - This - number - telephone. (Cairo - [illegible])
2. Ahmed - speak - I - May - to - , please ? ([illegible])


Word Time
SB page 20 WB page 20
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

Key Vocabulary — Activities أنشطة

1 wear a wig



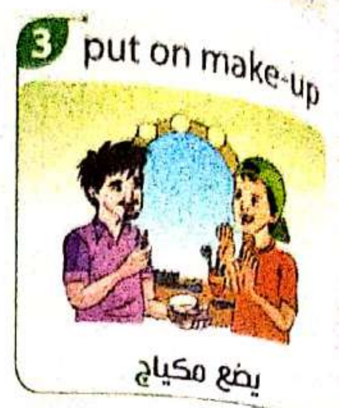
يرتدى باروكة

2 drive a sports car



يقود سيارة رياضية

3 put on make-up



يضع مكياج

4 make friends



يكوّن صداقات

5 get a sunburn



يأخذ حمام شمس

6 listen to music



يستمع إلى الموسيقى

7 take a nap



يأخذ غفوة «قيلولة»

8 talk on the phone



تتحدث فى الهاتف

9 sign autographs



يوقع اوتوجرافات

10 have an accident



يتعرض لحادث



استمع معاك MaBak App

Key Vocabulary

lemonade	عصير ليمون	chips	رقائق البطاطس المقلية
bottle	زجاجة	like	يحب
can	عُلبة (من الصفيح)		

Note

like to + inf مصدر الفعل يحب أن ...

- She likes to wear a wig.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
listen	يستمع	listened		wear	يرتدي	wore	
sign	يوقع	signed		put	يضع	put	
talk	يتحدث	talked		drive	يقود سيارة	drove	
				take	يأخذ	took	
				get	يحصل على	got	

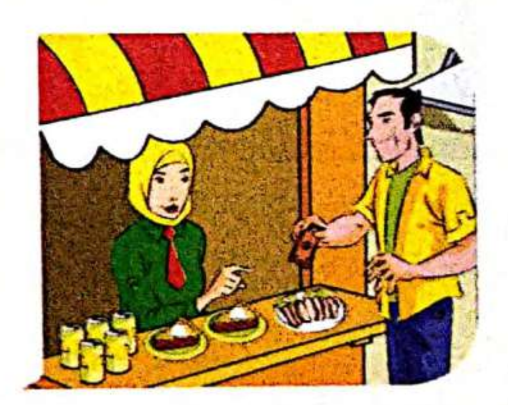
B Point and say the words. اشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة.

C Listen and point. استمع واشر إلى المتحدثين.

Man : I'll have a bottle of water, please.

Woman : Sorry. We're out of water. But the lemonade is very nice.

Man : Okay. I'll take a can of lemonade and some chips.





A : Hello ! May I speak to Dalia, please ?

B : She's not in right now.

A : Oh! Can you take a message ?

B : Sure.



Man : Can you do it by yourself ?

Actor : No, I can't.

Man : Okay. I will do it for you.



General Exercises on Word Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. wig - wear - make - help (Beni Suef 2014) (..................)
2. water - salad - lemonade - coffee (Suez 2014 / Kafr El-Sheikh - Sedi Salem 2018 / Alexandria - Borg El Arab 2019) (..................)
3. actor - autograph - driver - waiter (South Sinai 2014) (..................)
4. on - sign - in - by (..................)
5. make - fruit - drive - get (Souhag 2015) (..................)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... I speak to Sameh, please ? - Sure.
   a. May b. Is c. Do d. Have
   (امتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)
2. Ali sat in the sun and .... a sunburn. (Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)
   a. got b. put on c. drove d. ate
3. Do you ever .... an autograph ? (Menia - Samalout 2020)
   a. take b. paint c. sign d. put
4. My mother doesn't put .... make-up.
   a. in b. on c. for d. to
   (Alexandria 2015 / Sharkia 2017)
5. I usually get a .... when I go to Alexandria. (Menia 2015)
   a. wig b. nap c. speech d. sunburn
6. Last week, Hany .... an accident.
   a. had b. have c. has d. to have
7. Does she ever wear a .... ? (Qena 2020)
   a. nap b. cart c. wig d. shop
8. SB He .... on the phone.
   a. talking b. talk c. talked d. to talk

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

This is Big Star Film Studio. The visitors see a man listening to music and people are wearing wigs. One star is signing autographs. This actor doesn't put on make-up by himself. That man is tired and is taking a nap. This woman is trying to talk on the phone! The man over there is getting a sunburn. The three people are happy about making friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is Big Star Film ……………… .
   a. Studio b. Park c. School d. Zoo
2. The actor doesn't ……………… on make-up by himself.
   a. take b. try c. put d. get

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do the visitors see ?

………………………………………………………………

4. What is the woman doing ?

………………………………………………………………

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Film studio"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

……………………………………… *(Cairo - Heliopolis 2019)*

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Do you ever wear a wig Mona *(Minia - Maghagha 2018)*

………………………………………………………………

2. i don't know where ali is. *(Cairo - Shrouk 2020)*

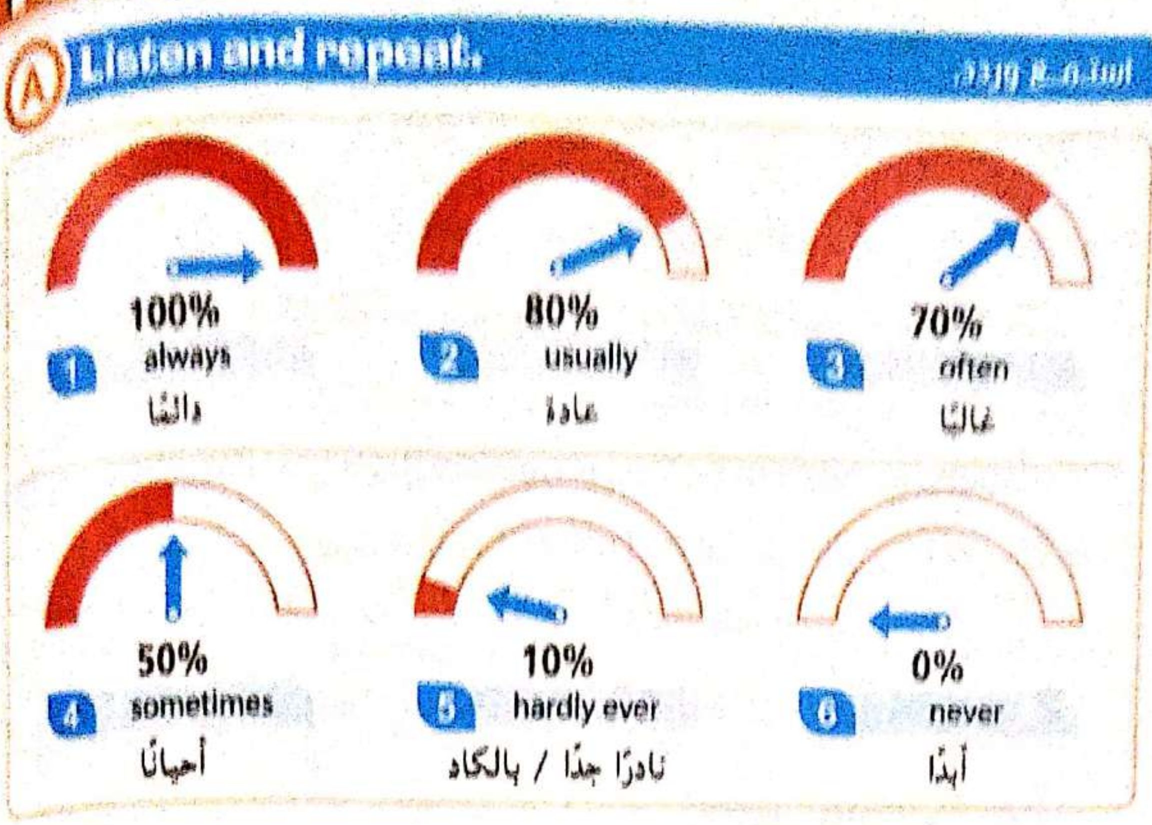
………………………………………………………………

Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 21&22 WB pages 21&22



(A) Listen and repeat. استمع و ردد.



لاحظ الأفعال التالية :

wear → wears	drive → drives	put → puts	fall → falls	get → gets
listen → listens	take → takes	talk → talks	sign → signs	have → has

(B) Listen and repeat. استمع و ردد.

Do you / Does he — ever listen to music?

Yes,	I he	always usually often sometimes	listen listens	to music.
No,	I he	hardly ever never	listen listens	to music.



قواعد وتمام

معاك Ma3ak App

Language Focus

1 Adverbs of frequency ١. ظروف التكرار

0%	10%	50%	70%	80%	100%
never	hardly ever	sometimes	often	usually	always

1 تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

ex. - I always get up early.

2 ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد "verb to be" فى الجملة.

ex. - We usually go out on Fridays. (قبل الفعل الأساسى)

- We are never late for school. (بعد verb to be)

2 The Present Simple Tense ٢. زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

★ يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من :

1 Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I /You / We/ They / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - I usually listen to music.

★ التصريف الأول للفعل مضافًا له "s" أو "es أو "ies" :

He /She / It /(Ali) اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s or es

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s) ← s
- أما التى تنتهى بـ (sh , ch , ss , x , o) يضاف لها (es) ← es

ex. - He usually gets a sunburn.

- She always watches TV at 10:00 p.m.

ملحوظات :

* الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - She **carries** a bag.

* الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

- He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

* الفعل (have) لا يضاف له s ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

- He **has** brown hair.

Usage الاستخدام

* يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

- He **likes** reading books on holidays.
- The sun **rises** in the east.

2 Negative statements الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I /you /we /They اسم جمع + **don't** } + (inf.) مصدر الفعل
He /she /It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't** }

ex. - I **don't play** football.
- He **doesn't wear** a wig.

ملحوظات :

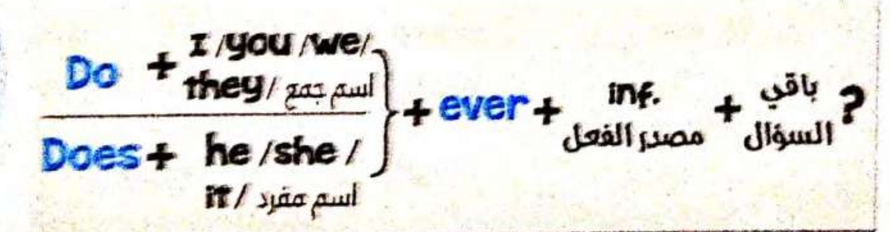
* الفعل بعد (doesn't - don't) يكون في المصدر (أي بدون أي إضافات).
* استخدام (hardly ever - never) يعطي معنى النفي مع عدم حذف (s) في نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He - She - It) أو أي اسم مفرد.

ex. - He **never takes** a nap. - They **hardly ever walk** to school.



3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No Questions السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟



Long answers الإجابات الكاملة

Yes, +	I / you / they / we	+ always / usually / sometimes / often	+	inf. مصدر الفعل
No, +	he / she / it	+ never / hardly ever	+	فعل مضاف إليه (s, es, ies)

لاحظ أن : ever تستخدم في السؤال فقط وعند الإجابة تستبدل بأحد ظروف التكرار السابقة.

- Do you ever wear a wig ?
- Yes, I always wear a wig.

عند الإجابة بالنفي يمكن استخدام "never" أو "hardly ever" مع ملاحظة عدم وضع "s" في نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He / She / It) أو أي اسم مفرد.

- Does he ever listen to music ?
- No, he never listens to music.

Exercise on Language Focus

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She sometimes .... to music. *(Souhag - Gerga 2018)*
   a. listening b. listen c. listened d. listens
2. .... you ever sign autographs ? *(Beheira - Damanhour 2018)*
   a. Is b. Do c. Does d. Was
3. I .... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday. *(Cairo - El Salam 2019)*
   a. ever b. never c. always d. usually
4. She .... a sunburn.
   a. always gets b. gets always c. always get d. get always
5. She likes music. She .... listens to music. *(Cairo 2017)*
   a. always b. hardly c. never d. ever
6. No, he .... drives a sports car. *(Beheira - Shubrakhit 2018)*
   a. yet b. ever c. hardly ever d. every
7. Does he usually .... a nap at noon ? *(Sharkia 2015)*
   a. takes b. take c. taking d. took
8. She hardly ever .... a wig.
   a. wearing b. wear c. to wear d. wears

C Look at page (20). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة فى كتاب الطالب صفحة (٢٠) ثم استمع واشر.



A: Do they ever have an accident ?

B: No, they hardly ever have an accident.

Practice Time

A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

Do you ever sign autographs ? No, I hardly ever sign autographs.

1. Do you ever listen to music ?
   Yes , I usually listen to music.

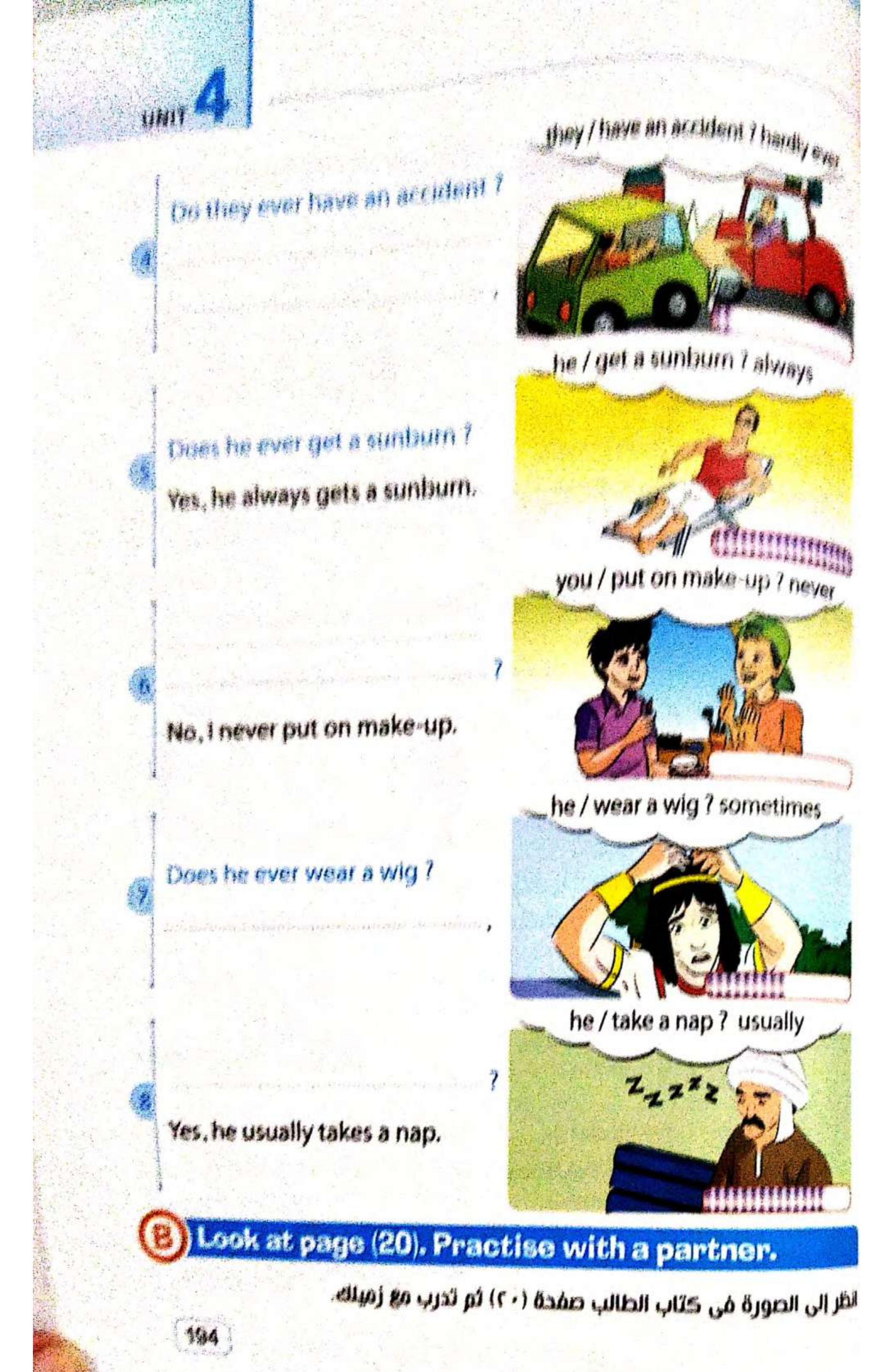


2. Does she ever talk on the phone ?
   Yes, she always talks on the phone.



3. Does he ever drive a sports car ?
   Yes, he often drives a sports car.





they / have an accident ? hardly ever

4. Do they ever have an accident ?

....,

he / get a sunburn ? always

5. Does he ever get a sunburn ?

Yes, he always gets a sunburn.

you / put on make-up ? never

6. .... ?

No, I never put on make-up.

he / wear a wig ? sometimes

7. Does he ever wear a wig ?

....,

he / take a nap ? usually

8. .... ?

Yes, he usually takes a nap.

B Look at page (20). Practise with a partner.

انظر إلى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة (٢٠) ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The film star is going to .... some autographs. *(Qena - Deshna 2020)*
   a. sign b. signed c. signs d. signing
2. He always .... a sunburn.
   a. puts b. gets c. talks d. takes
3. Does the actor wear a .... ? *(Cairo 2020)*
   a. cart b. wig c. make-up d. nap
4. No, I .... put on make-up. *(Aswan 2018)*
   a. never b. hardly c. often d. ever
5. No, she .... plays in the street. *(Dakahliya - Talkha 2019)*
   a. usually b. always c. hardly ever d. ever
6. Does he ever take a .... ? *(Assiut 2016)*
   a. speech b. music c. nap d. sunburn
7. Dina sometimes .... a wig. *(The New Valley 2015)*
   a. wears b. wear c. wearing d. wore
8. She is a bad driver. She always .... an accident.
   a. takes b. gets c. puts d. has

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. always - actor - usually - never
   (Cairo - El-Basateen & Dar El-Salam 2015) (......................)
2. school - wear - drive - put (......................)
3. plane - three - bus - bike *(Sharkia - Menia El-kamh 2018)* (......................)
4. hardly ever - never - fruit - often (......................)
5. Saturday - Tuesday - Friday - April *(Dakahlia 2017)* (......................)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Every morning, Hala gets up at half past six. She has her breakfast with her family. She usually has bread, cheese or eggs and milk. Then, she carries her bag and walks to school, her house is not far from school. On her way to school, she buys a flower. She gives it to her English teacher. She usually has lunch at twelve. She goes home at two o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala goes to school ....

a. by bus b. on foot c. by bike d. by car

2. Hala has lunch at ....

a. night b. home c. ten d. school

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When does Hala get up ?

....

4. Who does Hala give a flower ? *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. car - ever - **She** - drives - a sports - hardly. *(Menia 2020)*

....

2. Aya - sign - **Do** - autographs - and Faten - ever ? *(Alexandria 2020)*

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. We don t go to school on Friday *(Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)*

....

2. Can i meet you on Friday *(Port Said 2020)*

....

Reading & Your Time

SB pages 23 & 24 WB pages 23 & 24

Key Vocabulary

studio	استوديو	film star	نجم سينمائى
adventure film	فيلم مغامرات	tonight	الليلة
actor	ممثل	actress	ممثلة
rehearse	يتدرب على أداء تمثيلى		

Notes

١. كلمة (tonight) تأتى بدون حروف جر قبلها.

- We're going to go to the cinema tonight.

٢. أغلب الكلمات المنتهية بحرف (o) يضاف لها (es) عندما تجمع ولكن يوجد كلمات يضاف لها (s) ومنتهية بحرف (o).

a studio ⟶ studios a radio ⟶ radios

Active Vocabulary

cool	معتدل البرودة / رائع	citadel	قلعة
so	جدًا / لذلك	water park	منتزه مائى
really	بالفعل / حقًا	restaurant	مطعم
family	عائلة	Universal Studios	استديوهات عالمية
yesterday	أمس	beach	شاطئ
today	اليوم	scene	مشهد (فى فيلم أو مسرحية)
fun	مرح / ممتع	afternoon	فترة بعد الظهيرة

Notes

١. يستخدم حرف الجر (in) مع فترات اليوم:

- فى الصباح - in the morning
- فى المساء - in the evening
- فى وقت الظهيرة - in the afternoon

* بينما تستخدم (at) مع : - at night

٢. يستخدم الفعل (have) مع التعبيرات الآتية :

- يستمتع بوقته. - Have fun.
- يأخذ أجازة. - Have a holiday.
- يقضى وقتًا جميلاً. - Have a good time.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
visit يزور	visited	go يذهب	went
watch يشاهد	watched	eat يأكل	ate
talk يتحدث	talked	see يرى	saw
wait ينتظر	waited	make يصنع	made
rehearse يتدرب على أداء تمثيلي	rehearsed	say يقول	said

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. I'm having a good time.	١. أنا اقضى وقتًا ممتعًا.
2. It was fun.	٢. لقد كان ممتعًا.
3. I can't wait.	٣. لا استطيع الانتظار (عندى لهفة لذلك).
4. See you later.	٤. أراك لاحقًا.
5. at the studio	٥. فى الاستوديو
6. all kinds of	٦. كل الأنواع من...

New places & people أماكن وأشخاص جدد

Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباى (بالإسكندرية)
Florida	فلوريدا (ولاية أمريكية)
Disney World	عالم ديزنى (هو أكبر منتجع ترفيهى فى أمريكا و العالم ويحتوى على ملاهى وحدائق)
Ahmed El-Sakka	احمد السقا (ممثل مصرى)
Michael Stiles	مايكل ستيلس (ممثل أجنبى)

Reading Time

Alexandria

SB page 23

Introduction : مقدمة

'Alexandria' is an email about Mona's visit to Alexandria.

'الإسكندرية' هي رسالة بريد إلكتروني عن زيارة منى إلى مدينة الاسكندرية.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Mona is having a good time in Alexandria with her family.

١- تقضي منى وقتًا ممتعًا في مدينة الإسكندرية مع عائلتها.

2. Mona and her family visited Alexandria Library.

٢- زارت كلًا من منى وأسرتها مكتبة الإسكندرية.

3. They also visited Qaitbay Citadel.

٣- قاموا أيضًا بزيارة قلعة قايتباي.

4. They watched the actors rehearse.

٤- شاهدوا الممثلين يتدربوا على الأداء التمثيلي.

A Listen and read along.

Alexandria

To : eman@egy.com
From : mona@egy.com
Subject : Alexandria

Hi, Eman!

I'm having a good time in Alexandria with my family. We visited Alexandria Library yesterday. Today we visited Qaitbay Citadel[1]. It was fun ! In the afternoon, we went to a film studio [2]. They make all kinds of films at this studio.



Check Vocabulary

قلعة قايتباي	(1)
استوديو	(2)

Today they were making an adventure film [3]. We watched the actors [4] rehearse [5]. It was so cool. Then we talked to Ahmed El-Sakka (the film star). He's really [6] nice.

Tonight we're going to eat dinner at a nice restaurant. We're going to go to the beach tomorrow. I can't wait ! See you on Sunday!

Love,

Mona

(3) فيلم مغامرة
(4) ممثلون
(5) يتدربون على أداء تمثيلي
(6) حقًا / بالفعل

Exercise on Vocabulary

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They went to a .... studio in Alexandria to watch the actors rehearse.
   a. program b. cartoon c. film d. TV
   (Cairo - El-Khalifa & El-Mokattam 2019)
2. Noha visited Qaitbay .... in Alexandria.
   a. Beach b. Citadel c. Library d. School
3. We watched the actors .... It was so cool !
   a. rehearse b. teach c. eat d. repeat
4. They make all kinds of films at this ....
   a. studio b. hospital c. park d. beach
5. We're going to visit Alexandria Library in the ....
   a. night b. afternoon c. tonight d. today
6. We .... a good time in Alexandria.
   a. take b. have c. make d. do
7. Adel Emam is a film ....
   a. actress b. moon c. star d. studio
8. Sindbad, the sailor البحار made many .... in the sea.
   a. boxes b. adventures c. accidents d. cars

B Listen and circle True or False.

1. Mona was in Aswan. True False
2. Mona went to the cinema. True False

3. Mona talked to a film star. True False
4. Mona went to Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Where is Mona having a good time ?

....

2. What did she watch at the film studio ?

....

3. Who did she talk to at the film studio ?
   She talked to Ahmed El-Sakka (the film star).
4. When did she visit Qaitbay Citadel ?
   She visited Qaitbay Citadel today.

Florida *WB page 23*

Introduction : مقدمة

"Florida" is an email about Bill's visit to Florida.

"فلوريدا" هي بريد إلكتروني عن زيارة "بيل" إلى فلوريدا.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. Bill visited Disney World yesterday. ١- زار بيل عالم ديزني أمس.
2. Bill also visited Universal Studios, a film studio.

٢- زار أيضا بيل إستديوهات عالمية منها استديو لتصوير الأفلام.

3. They make all kinds of films at this studio.

٣- إنهم يقومون بتصوير جميع أنواع الأفلام في هذا الاستديو.

اقرأ النص في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever sign autographs ?

....

2. Do you ever talk on the phone ?

....

3. Do your friends ever listen to music ?

....

4. Do you ever drive a sports car ?

....

B Pair work. Write. Then ask your partner.

بالعمل فى ثنائيات واكتب ثم اسأل زميلك.

* Do you ever take a nap ?

	You	Your Partner
1. take a nap	I usually take a nap.	Dalia never takes a nap.
2. wear a wig		
3. listen to music		
4. talk on the phone		

always
often
sometimes
hardly ever
never
usually

C Review. Read and write the answers.

إقرا واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever see a film by yourself ?

....

2. Do you and your friends ever go to the beach ?

....

3. What did you do yesterday ?

....

4. What are you going to do tomorrow ?

....



General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I love to swim. I'm going to the .... in summer.
   a. peach b. pavement c. post office d. beach
   (Alexandria - Agami 2020)
2. We saw actors .... a film studio. (Sohag - Juhayna 2018)
   a. at b. under c. for d. to
3. The actors always rehearse at the .... (Beheira - Shubrakhit 2018)
   a. studio b. school c. home d. hotel
4. He didn't .... a sports car by himself. (Cairo 2016)
   a. drives b. drive c. driving d. drove
5. Mona is having a good .... in Alexandria.
   a. club b. library c. time d. star
6. The film star is going to .... some autographs. (Beni Suef 2016)
   a. sign b. signs c. signed d. signing
7. Mira .... takes a nap.
   a. doesn't b. didn't c. usually d. ever
8. We .... Alexandria every summer. (Menofia 2017)
   a. feed b. visit c. invent d. bake

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. actor - doctor - teacher - rehearse (Heliopolis 2019) (......................)
2. film - studio - museum - library (Cairo - New Cairo 2019) (......................)
3. library - citadel - beach - love (......................)
4. visited - watched - film - walked (......................)
5. Sunday - citadel - Friday - Monday (......................)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Ali. Last Friday, I went to Alexandria with my family. We arrived at Alexandria at nine a.m. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. In the afternoon, we went to the sea. We played football on the beach. My father and mother got a sunburn. We had dinner at a nice restaurant. We enjoyed our time there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They arrived in Alexandria in the ....
   a. afternoon b. night c. morning d. evening
2. Ali's father and mother got a .... on the beach.
   a. present b. haircut c. meal d. sunburn

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they go in the afternoon ?

....

4. What did they visit in Alexandria ?

....

(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. visited - Library - yesterday - **We** - Alexandria.

(Dakahlia - Sherbeen 2020 / Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2020 / Cairo - New Cairo 2020 / Beni Suef - El Fashn 2020 / Fayoum 2020)

....

2. Qaitbay - did - visit - you - **When** - Citadel ? *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....



Quiz اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات



How to write

كيف تكتب

Unit 4

Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تمهيد الدرس: الإحماء

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تعتمد على المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

1. Do you ever drive a sports car ?
   - Yes, I often drive a sports car.
2. Does he ever get a sunburn ?
   - No, he never gets a sunburn.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي أخذها من مهارة الكتابة

• Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

wig - have - nap



1. Do you ever .... an accident?



2. He always wears a ....

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي أخذها من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word :

get - gets - never

1. No, he .... listens to music.
2. She usually .... a sunburn.

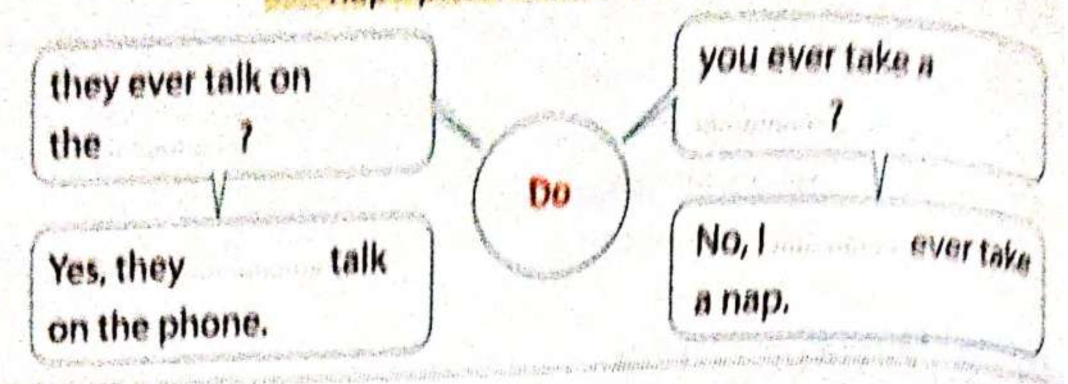
Step 4 Your idea web

شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة

شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به لتكوين جمل باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها

• Choose and complete the idea web.

nap - phone - hardly - always



Step 5 Your writing

الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• Read, cut and stick.

To : hamza@gmail.com
From : zein@gmail.com
Subject : visiting a film studio

Cut & Paste here
from page 295

Writing checklist

- 1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
- 2. My sentences end with a full stop.
- 3. My words are in the correct order.

تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل واسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. going – **I** – late – for – lunch – to be – 'm.
2. never – **Asmaa** – sunburn – a – gets.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1		'm going to be	
2		(never) gets	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. him – **Give** – message – , please – this.
2. talk – **Don't** – phone – the – on.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

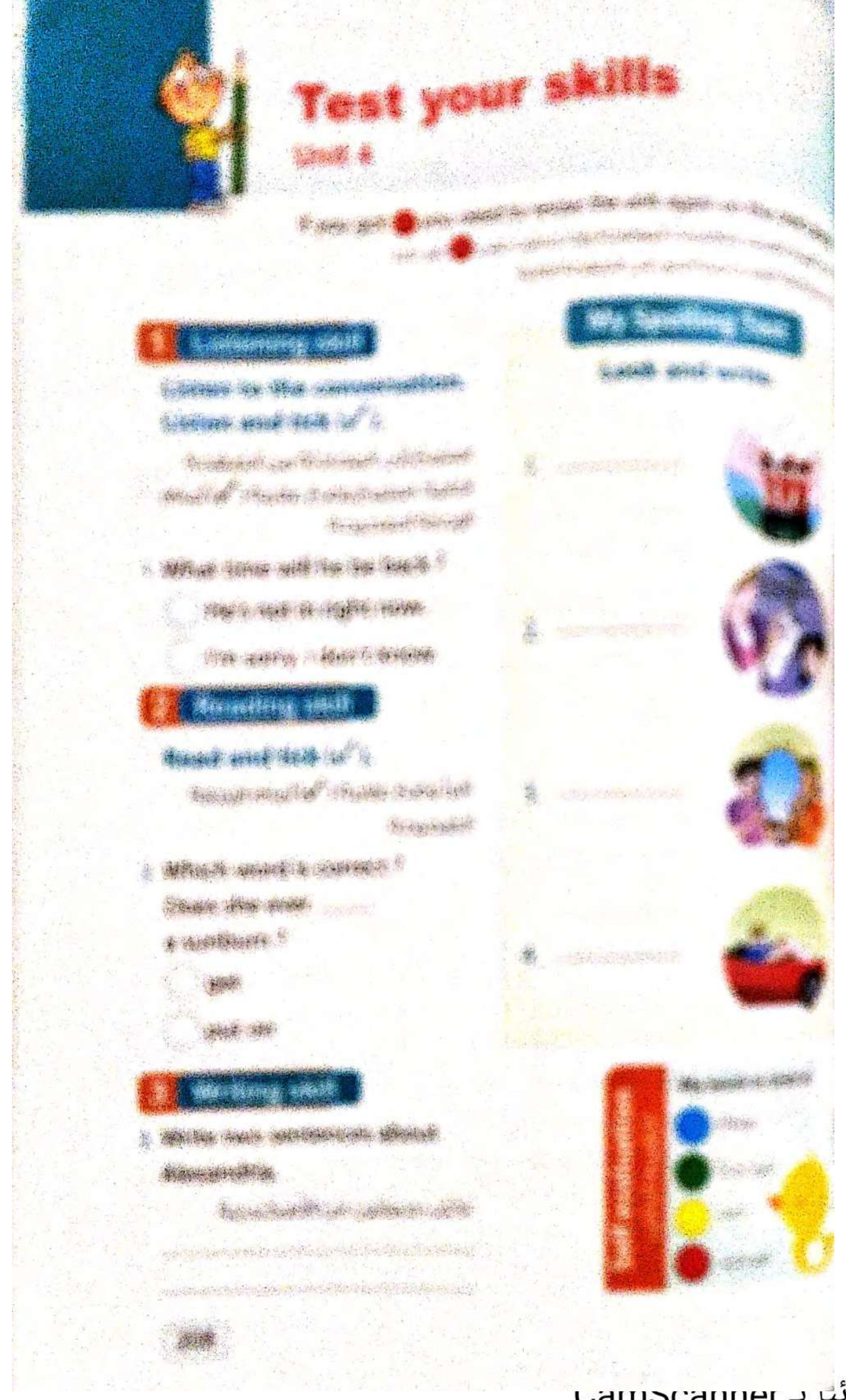
1. will – **What** – back – be – he – time ?
2. did – **Where** – you – yesterday – go ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1		will			
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. Ahmed – **May** – to – speak – I ?
2. he – **Does** – a – ever – wear – wig ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2			(ever) wear	


Test your skills

Review on Unit 4



1. Conversation

Man : Hello !

Woman : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?

Man : He's not in right now.

Woman : What time will he be back ?

Man : I'm sorry. I don't know.

Woman : Can you take a message ?

Man : Sure. Who's calling ?

Woman : This is Salwa Kamel. I'm going to be late for lunch today. I'll see him at 1:00.

Man : Got it. What's your number ?

Woman : 35551839.

Man : Okay. I'll give him your message.

Woman : Thanks.

Man : You're welcome.

2. Vocabulary

listen to music
يستمع إلى الموسيقى

sign autographs
يوقع أوتجرافات

wear a wig
يرتدى باروكة (شعر مستعار)

put on make-up
يضع مكياج (مستحضرات تجميل)

get a sunburn
يأخذ حمام شمس

drive a sports car
يقود سيارة رياضية

talk on the phone
يتحدث فى الهاتف

have an accident
يتعرض لحادث

make friends
يكوّن صداقات

take a nap
يأخذ غفوة (قسطاً من الراحة)

3. Language Focus

* Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا . usually عادة

often غالبًا . sometimes أحيانًا

hardly ever بالكاد / نادرًا جدًا .

never أبدًا

لاحظ ظروف التكرار تستخدم فى زمن المضارع البسيط

* Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

* Formation: التكوين

I, We, You, They, (اسم جمع) + التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات

He, She, It, (اسم مفرد) + التصريف الأول للفعل + s, es, ies

- I sometimes walk to school.
- She never plays football.

* Interrogative: صيغة الاستفهام

Do + I, we, you, they + ever + مصدر الفعل ...... ?

Does + he, she, it + ever + مصدر الفعل ...... ?

Workbook On Conversation Time page 15

A. Unscramble and write. Then number the sentences in the correct order:

أعد الترتيب واكتب ثم رقم الجمل بالترتيب الصحيح :

3
nCa ouy etak a segesam ?
Can you take a message ?
eruS. hos'W laclgni ?
Sure. Who's calling ?



1
elloH. yaM I keaps ot dmAeh. seaple ?
Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?
e'Hs ton ni girth nwo.
He's not in right now.

4
siTh si alSaw. ml' inggo to eb tela rof lchun dayot.
This is Salwa. I'm going to be late for lunch today.
oGt ti. Il'l vieg mih oury gasseem.
Got it. I'll give him your message.

2
hatW mite lliw eh eb bakc ?
What time will he be back ?
m'I rrosy. I to'dn wonk.
I'm sorry. I don't know.

B. Look at A. Answer the questions:

انظر إلى التمرين (A) واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Who's calling ? Salwa is calling.
2. Does Ahmed talk to Salwa ? No, he doesn't.
3. Is Ahmed going to be late for lunch ? No, he isn't. Salwa is going to be late for lunch.

Workbook On Word Time page 15

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a , b , c أو d :

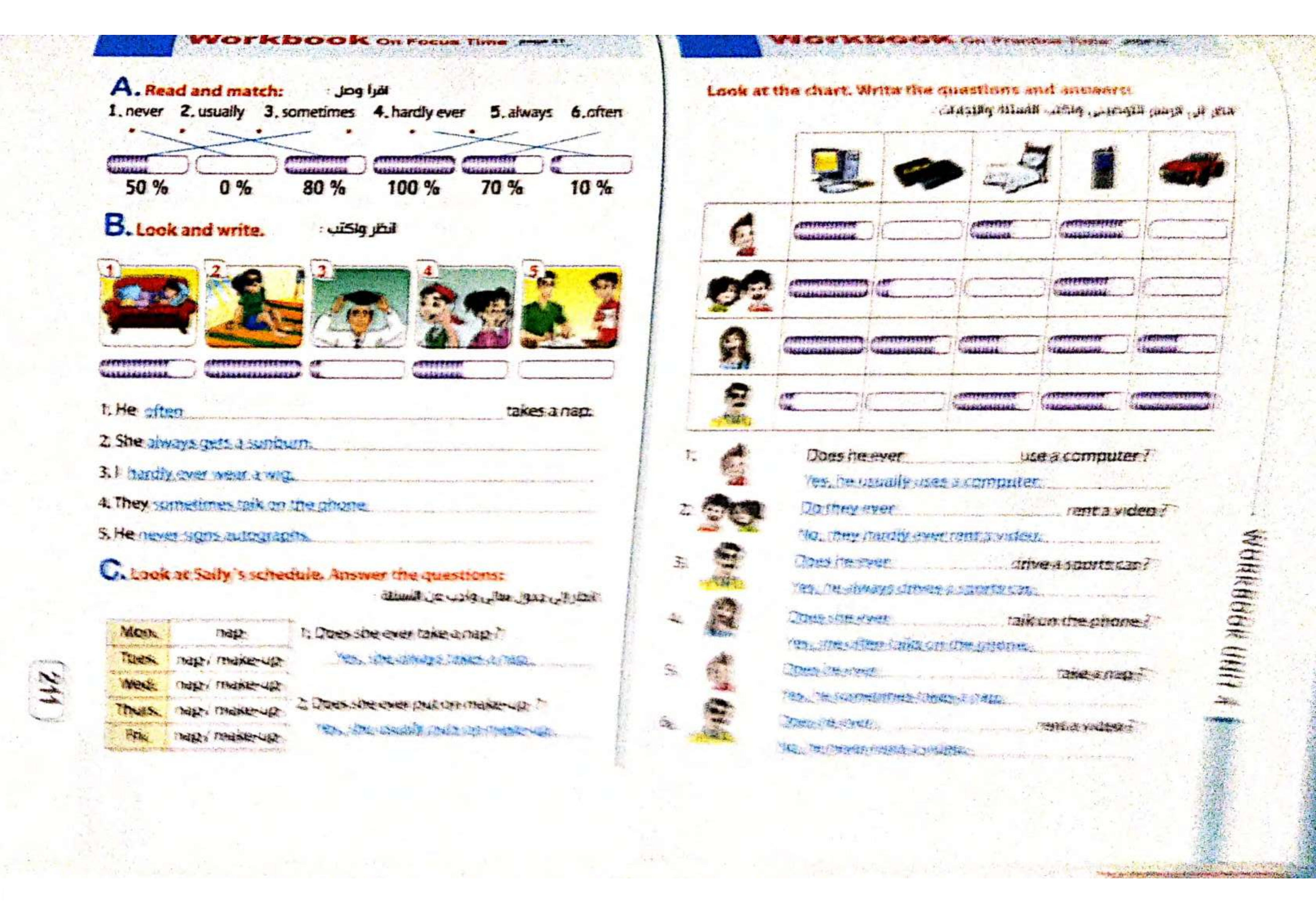
1. He .... to a friend.
   a. talked b. did c. wore d. had
2. She .... a wig.
   a. listened b. wore c. went d. talked
3. She .... a sunburn.
   a. drove b. got c. talked d. played
4. He .... a nap.
   a. wore b. put c. took d. did
5. She .... on make-up.
   a. had b. put c. signed d. gave
6. The actor .... autographs.
   a. drove b. wore c. signed d. talked
7. He .... a sports car.
   a. talked b. wrote c. drove d. signed
8. She .... to music.
   a. had b. did c. listened d. was
9. He .... on the phone.
   a. listened b. talked c. took d. heard
10. We didn't .... an accident.
    a. drive b. have c. put d. sign

B. What do they like to do ? Look and write:

ماذا يحبون أن يفعلوا ؟ انظر واكتب :

He likes to talk on the phone.

She likes to listen to music.



A. Read and match: اقرأ وصل

1. never 2. usually 3. sometimes 4. hardly ever 5. always 6. often

50 % 0 % 80 % 100 % 70 % 10 %

B. Look and write. انظر واكتب

1. He often takes a nap.
2. She always gets a sunburn.
3. I hardly ever wear a wig.
4. They sometimes talk on the phone.
5. He never signs autographs.

C. Look at Sally's schedule. Answer the questions:

انظر إلى جدول سالي وأجب عن الأسئلة

Mon.	nap
Tues.	nap / make-up
Wed.	nap / make-up
Thurs.	nap / make-up
Fri.	nap / make-up

1. Does she ever take a nap?
   Yes, she always takes a nap.
2. Does she ever put on make-up?
   Yes, she usually puts on make-up.

Look at the chart. Write the questions and answers:

انظر إلى الرسم التوضيحي، واكتب الأسئلة والإجابات

1. Does he ever use a computer?
   Yes, he usually uses a computer.
2. Do they ever rent a video?
   No, they hardly ever rent a video.
3. Does he ever drive a sports car?
   Yes, he always drives a sports car.
4. Does she ever talk on the phone?
   Yes, she often talks on the phone.
5. Does he ever take a nap?
   Yes, he sometimes takes a nap.
6. Does he ever rent a video?
   No, he never rents a video.

Workbook On Reading Time page 23

A. Read. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb forms:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بصيغ الفعل الصحيحة :

rehearse go talk have make watch visit See make

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

Hi, Kareem!

I'm having a good time in Florida! I visited Disney World yesterday. Today I visited Universal Studios, a film studio. They make all kinds of films. Today they were making an adventure film. I watched the actors rehearse a scene. Then I talked to Michael Stiles (the film star)

I'm going to go to a water park tomorrow. I can't wait!
See you on Sunday!

Your friend,
Bill

B. Read and circle True or False: : (False) أو (True) اقرأ وضع دائرة حول

1. Bill visited Disney World today. True (False)
2. Bill met a film star. (True) False
3. Bill watched the actors rehearse at the water park. True (False)
4. They were making an adventure film at the studio. (True) False

C. Read the question. Write the answer: : اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة

1. Where is Disney World ?
   Disney World is in Florida.
2. Who is Michael Stiles ?
   Michael Stiles is a film star.
3. Why did Bill say "I can't wait" ?
   Because he's going to go to a water park tomorrow.

Workbook On Your Time page 24

UNIT 4

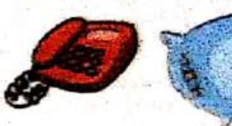
A. Read the question. Write the answer:

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة :

Answers will vary.

1. Do you ever wear a wig ?
2. Do you ever get a sunburn ?
3. Do your ever listen to music ?
4. Do you ever put on make-up ?
5. Do you ever talk on the phone ?
6. Do you ever take a nap ?





B. Write an email about a trip. Look at page 23 for help:

أكتب بريد الكتروني عن رحلة. أنظر إلى صفحة (٢٣) في كتاب الطالب ليساعدك على الكتابة.

Answers will vary.

Dear ....

Exam Language Bank



أهم النقاط موضع اختبار في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع أحياء الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(الدقهلية - عمدة الحي ٢٠١٧ - امتحان مجمع القاهرة - الشرقية ٢٠٢١)

telephone number	رقم الهاتف	sign autographs	يوقع أوتوجرافات
film studio	استديو تصوير	actor	ممثل
late	متأخر	rehearse	يتدرب على أداء تمثيلى
wear a wig	يرتدى باروكة	film star	نجم سينمائى
take a nap	يأخذ غفوة	adventure film	فيلم مغامرات
get a sunburn	يأخذ حمام شمس		

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠١٥ - امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢١)

1. I always[1] get up early.
2. Do[2] you ever[2] wear a wig ?
3. Yes, I always wear a wig[3].

Check Language

(1) أحد ظروف التكرار يأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي

(2) صيغة الاستفهام بمعنى هل

(3) الإجابات المثبتة الكاملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

3. Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(الدقهلية - المنزلة ٢٠١٩)

Questions	Answers
• May I speak to Ahmed, please ?	- He isn't in right now.
• What time will he be back ?	- I'm sorry. I don't know.
• Can you take a message ?	- Sure.
• What's your telephone number ?	- It's 35551839.

Test 7 on Unit 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. Yes, I usually listen to music.
   b. Yes, I usually play music.
   (Qalyoubia 2017 / Cairo - El-Basateen & Dar El-Salam 2017)

2. a. I'm sorry. I don't know.
   b. I'm sorry. I can't tell you. *(Giza 2019)*

3. a. Does he get a sunburn ?
   b. Does he wear a wig ? *(Gharbia 2017)*

4. a. What time will he be back ?
   b. What time will he arrive there ? *(Alexandria - East 2018)*

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Maha : Hello ! (1) .... I speak to Nada, please ?
Rania : Hello ! She isn't in right now.
Maha : (2) .... time will she be back ?
Rania : I'm (3) .... I don't know.
Maha : Please, tell her that I will come (4) ....
tomorrow.
Rania : Okay. I will tell her. *(Giza 2017 / Cairo - Zeitoun 2019)*

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It hardly ever .... in summer. (امتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)
   a. rain b. rained c. is raining d. rains
2. I sometimes .... a nap after school. *(Menofia 2017)*
   a. put on b. wear c. make d. take
3. My uncle .... a sports car every day. *(Ismailia 2014)*
   a. drive b. drives c. driving d. drove
4. I usually .... a sunburn when I go to Alexandria. *(Menia 2015)*
   a. get b. play c. give d. eat

5. Does your sister wear her .... ? *(Cairo - El-Waili 2016)*
   a. cart b. wig c. make-up d. cat
6. Qaitbay .... is in Alexandria. *(South Sinai 2014)*
   a. Museum b. Theatre c. Citadel d. Restaurant
7. Does your brother ever .... on the phone ? (امتحان مجمع السويس ٢٠٢١)
   a. talks b. talking c. talk d. talked
8. .... she ever take a nap ? *(South Sinai 2014)*
   a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Are

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. wig - wear - make - help *(Beni Suef 2014)* (..................)
2. summer - winter - rain - spring *(Cairo 2016)* (..................)
3. library - hospital - museum - water *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2017)* (..................)
4. always - actor - usually - never (..................) *(Cairo - El-Basaten & Dar El-Salam 2018)*
5. computer - dentist - teacher - actor *(Damietta 2015)* (..................)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They went to the beach ....
   a. in the morning b. in the afternoon
   c. in the winter d. in the evening
2. They had lunch at ....
   a. the library b. the cinema
   c. a nice restaurant d. the citadel

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How did they go to Alexandria ?
   ....
4. What did they visit there ?
   ....

(Aswan 2014 / Giza 2017 / Cairo - Hadaiq Al - Qubbah 2019)

C Writing

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Noura to tell her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Aya. Your email address is aya@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is noura@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

.... *(Cairo - Maadi 2019)*

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. he - **What** - will - time - back - be ?
(Beheira 2015/Port Said 2016/Dakahlia 2017 / Qalubia - Kanater 2018)

....

2. **Yes,** - listens - music - to - always - he. *(Dakahlia 2015)*

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where did you go last Monday *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....

2. yes we met him last Sunday. *(Suez 2020)*

....



Test 8 on Unit 4

• Understand • Apply • Create



تنويه | يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصحيحه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. She watched a match.
   b. She watched the actors rehearse a scene.
2. a. No, thank you.
   b. Yes, please.
3. a. Do you ever have an accident ?
   b. Do you ever listen to music ?
4. a. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?
   b. Can I speak to Hany, please ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Hany : Did you visit Alexandria ?
Samir : Yes, I (1) ....
Hany : Who did you (2) .... with ?
Samir : I went with my (3) ....
Hany : (4) .... did you visit there ?
Samir : I visited Alexandria Library.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Actors always .... autographs.
   a. take b. talk c. sign d. play
2. Ahmed Helmy is a famous film ....
   a. school b. star c. library d. park
3. I never put .... make-up.
   a. for b. of c. in d. on
4. I hardly .... wear a wig.
   a. always b. often c. ever d. never

5. She always talks on the ....

a. photo b. radio c. phone d. car

6. I never .... an accident.

a. take b. do c. play d. have

7. I'll .... him your message.

a. gives b. gave c. give d. giving

8. .... you ever listen to music ?

a. Has b. Is c. Do d. Does

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. friend - father - mother - sister (...............)
2. library - studio - citadel - film (...............)
3. get - put - have - Alexandria (...............)
4. car - train - sport - taxi (...............)
5. doctor - baker - actor - beach (...............)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Aya is a student in our school. She is thirteen years old. She gets up at six o'clock. She walks to school every day because her house is near the school. At school, she learns many subjects. Her teachers like her because she gets high marks. Aya comes back home at two o'clock. She studies her lessons and goes to bed at ten o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya goes to school ....

a. by car b. on foot c. by bus d. by taxi

2. Aya is a ....

a. teacher b. doctor c. student d. nurse

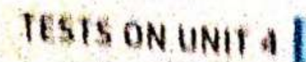
B. Answer the following questions:

3. When does Aya go to bed ?

....

4. Why do Aya's teachers like her ?

....





6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Visiting a film studio"



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. always - have - I - breakfast - in - the morning.

2. Ali - take - **Can** - a message ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. nabil left Tanta to work in Cairo

2. Heba and Walaa want to visit alexandria





◄ العب مع صديقك المعاصر لعبة **Mo kids** لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

◄ متعة تعلم اللغة الانجليزية **Enjoy Learning English**

◄ انزع البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.



1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students لطلاب معاهد الأزهر الشريف

1 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Nancy telling her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Fatma. Your email address is fatma@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nancy@gmail.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

2 Punctuate the following sentence:

i don t know where ali is

....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبّق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sarah never .... a wig.

a. wears b. wear c. wore d. wearing

2. .... Ahmed going to be late for lunch ?

a. Does b. Is c. Did d. Was



Quiz 3 on Units 1 , 2 , 3 & 4

اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١ ، ٢ ، ٣ ، ٤)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات السابقة.



Model A

Marks

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

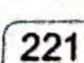
1. My bag is .... than your bag.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
2. Ali sat in the sun and .... a sunburn.
   a. got b. put c. drove d. did
3. He didn't drive a sports car by ....
   a. herself b. myself c. themselves d. himself
4. You can borrow a book from the school ....
   a. cinema b. park c. library d. station
5. She sometimes .... to music.
   a. listening b. listen c. listens d. listened

Model B

Marks

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He .... going to see a film.
   a. does b. are c. have d. is
2. In the museum, children under five can get in for ....
   a. cost b. fine c. free d. food
3. My brother isn't .... right now.
   a. in b. on c. next d. of
4. We .... a good time in Alexandria.
   a. take b. make c. do d. have
5. They went to a .... studio to watch the actor rehearse.
   a. program b. cartoon c. film d. TV





علامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
علامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- talk about the weather
  - التحدث عن الطقس (حالة الجو)
- inquire after family — الاستفسار عن أفراد الأسرة
- ask about the frequency of actions
  - السؤال عن تكرار الأحداث
- identify speakers in a conversation
  - التعرف على المتحدثين فى المحادثة

Reading

- read a newspaper advice column
  - قراءة عمود بإحدى الصحف لتوجيه النصائح

Vocabulary

- activities
  - التعرف على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة ببعض الأنشطة

Grammar

- adverbial phrases of frequency (once a day, twice a week, three times a month)
  - معرفة العبارات الظرفية للتكرار (مرة فى اليوم ، مرتان فى الأسبوع ، ثلاث مرات فى الشهر)
- Wh-questions with "How often ... ?"
  - تعلم الأسئلة التى تبدأ بـ «كم مرة .... ؟»

لإتقان الوحدة :

- كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.
- Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.
- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

Conversation Time

SB page 25 WB page 25

Key Vocabulary

degree	درجة	town	مدينة صغيرة
maybe	ربما / من المحتمل	'd better	من الأفضل
cloudy	غائم / ملبد بالغيوم	= had better	
flu	الفلونزا	do better	يتحسن
serious	خطير	weather	الطقس

Notes

- I have the flu.
- It's getting cloudy.
- 'd better + inf. (المصدر)
- I'd better go home.

١. نستخدم الفعل (have) مع الأمراض بمعنى يصاب بـ

٢. يستخدم الفعل (get) مع كلمة (cloudy) بمعنى (تبدأ ان) او (تصبح) .

٣. أفضل أن ...

Active Vocabulary

seat	مقعد (مكان للجلوس)	family	عائلة
cold	بارد	better	أفضل
today	اليوم	good	جيد
right	صحيح	tonight	الليلة
sister	أخت	fine	بخير

Note

كلمة (family) تعامل معاملة المفرد عندما تتحدث عن العائلة ككل. وتعامل معاملة الجمع عند التحدث عن أفراد العائلة.

How is your family? - They are fine.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. Have a seat.	١. تفضل بالجلوس.
2. That's right.	٢. هذا صحيح.
3. That's wrong.	٣. هذا خطأ .
4. What's the weather like ?	٤. ما حالة الطقس ؟
5. It's getting cloudy.	٥. بدأت السماء تزداد غيومًا.

6. go home	٦. يذهب للمنزل
7. Take care!	٧. احذر / اهتم (بنفسك) / احترس!
8. I'm sorry to hear that.	٨. آسف لسماع ذلك.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
start يبدأ	started	hear يسمع	heard
rain يمطر	rained	do يفعل	did
		have/has يتناول/يمتلك	had
		take يأخذ	took
		think يعتقد	thought

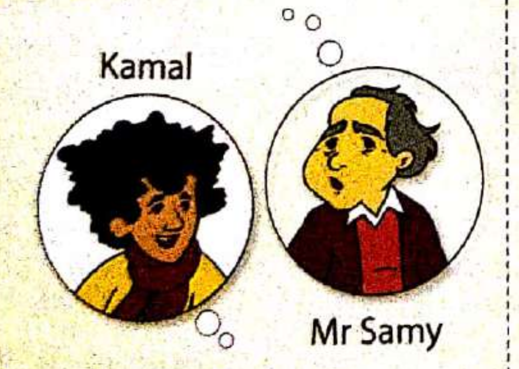
Exercise on Vocabulary

● Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. hot - warm - hat - cloudy *(Cairo - Ain Shams 2018)* (..............)
2. rain - sister - father - brother (..............)
3. hear – think - degree - do (..............)
4. start - right - good - serious (..............)
5. seat - tonight - tomorrow - yesterday (..............)

In Town في المدينة

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



•Topic موضوع المحادثة

In today's conversation, Kamal and Mr Samy are friends. They are meeting in the park. They're talking together.

في محادثة اليوم، كمال والأستاذ سامي أصدقاء وهما يتقابلان في الحديقة ويتحدثان مع بعضهما البعض.



Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



English	العربية
Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy!	**كمال** : مرحبًا أستاذ سامى!
Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.	**أ/ سامى** : مرحبًا كمال. تفضل بالجلوس.
Kamal : Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.	**كمال** : شكرًا. ياه ! الطقس بارد اليوم.
Mr Samy : That's right. It's 23 degrees!	**أ/ سامى** : حقًا. درجة الحرارة اليوم ٢٣ درجة !
Kamal : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?	**كمال** : ياه ! هل تعتقد أنها ستمطر ؟
Mr Samy : Maybe. It's getting cloudy.	**أ/ سامى** : ربما. فالسماء تزداد غيومًا.
Mr Samy : So, how's your family, Kamal ?	**أ/ سامى** : إذن، كيف حال عائلتك يا كمال؟
Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.	**كمال** : بخير. ولكن أختى مصابة بالأنفلونزا.
Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that.	**أ/ سامى** : حزين لسماع ذلك.
Kamal : It's not serious. She's doing better today.	**كمال** : الأمر ليس خطير. لقد تحسنت اليوم.
Mr Samy : Good!	**أ/ سامى** : جيد!
Kamal : Look! It's starting to rain.	**كمال** : أنظر! بدأ الجو يمطر.
Mr Samy : I'd better go home. Take care, Kamal.	**أ/ سامى** : من الأفضل أن أذهب للمنزل. إعتنِ بنفسك يا كمال.
Kamal : Bye, Mr Samy.	**كمال** : إلى اللقاء ياأستاذ سامى.

Language Functions



1

• للتحية نستخدم :

- Hi/Hello. ـ أهلًا / مرحبًا.

• لدعوة شخص ما للجلوس نستخدم :

- Have a seat. ـ تفضل بالجلوس.

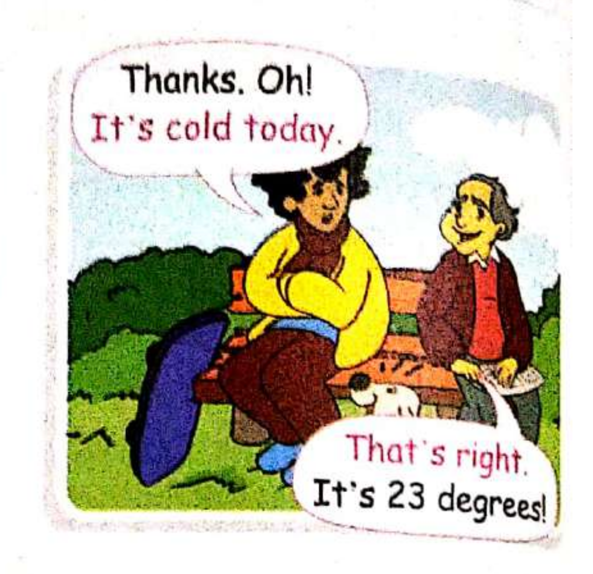
2

• للتعبير عن حالة الطقس نستخدم :

- It's + (حالة الطقس).
- It's cold today. – الطقس بارد اليوم.

• عند الاتفاق مع شخص ما فى الرأى :

- That's right. – هذا صحيح.





3

• للتعبير عن الدهشة نستخدم :

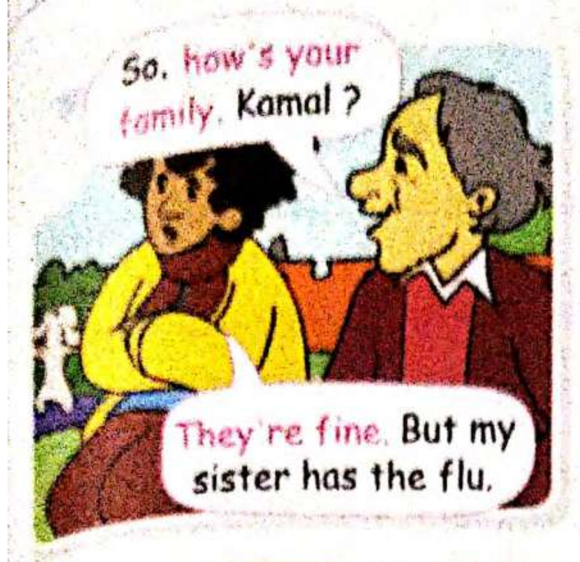
- Wow!

• عند السؤال عن الرأى تستخدم :

- Do you think...? – هل تعتقد ؟
- Do you think it's going to rain?
- هل تعتقد أنها ستمطر ؟

• للرد بالاحتمالية (عدم التأكد):

- Maybe. – ربما.





4

• للسؤال عن أسرة شخص/عائلته نستخدم :

- How is your family ?

• للرد :

- عند الإبلاغ عن أخبار جيدة.

- They are fine.

- عند الإبلاغ عن أخبار سيئة.

- My sister has the flu.

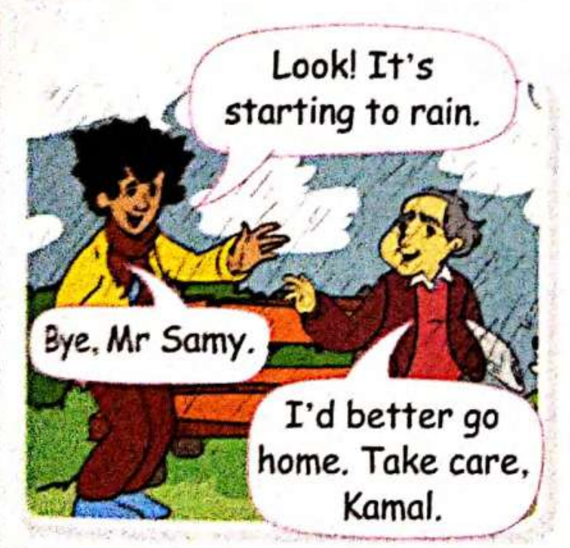
5

• للتعبير عن التعاطف مع شخص لسماع خبر سيئ نستخدم :

- I'm sorry to hear that.

- إنى حزين لسماع ذلك.





6

• عند التحذير نستخدم :

- Take care ! - كن حذرًا !

• لوداع شخص نستخدم :

- Bye. - مع السلامة.

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملاءك فى المحادثة السابقة.



General Exercises on Conversation time

• Understand • Apply • Evaluate

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. It's cold. *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2019)*
   b. It's hot. *(Giza - South Giza 2019)*
2. a. No, it doesn't.
   b. Yes, it is.
3. a. Do you think it's going to rain ?
   b. Do you think it's going to be cloudy ?
4. a. How is your sister ?
   b. How is your family ?

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Asmaa : Good morning, Amira.
Amira : Good morning, Asmaa.
Asmaa : How is your (1) .... now ?
Amira : She is (2) ....
Asmaa : Do you think that she had the (3) .... ?
Amira : You (4) .... right.

(Cairo - Zawia 2020 / Cairo - El-Marg 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hello, Kamal ! Have a ....
   a. pen b. book c. seat d. chair
2. It's a bad accident. I'm sorry .... that.
   a. hear b. to hear c. heard d. hear to
3. Today is cold. It's 20 ....
   a. clouds b. degrees c. seats d. marks
4. It is .... to rain. *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020 / Menia - Deir Mawas 2020)*
   a. go b. gone c. going d. to go
5. I'd better .... home now. *(Qalyoubia - Benha 2020)*
   a. go b. to go c. went d. going
6. I think it's going .... *(Dakahlia - Belbes 2018 / Giza - Al-Agouza 2017)*
   a. rain b. to rain c. raining d. rains

7. My brother is ill. He has the ....
a. seat   b. family   c. flu   d. degree

8. It isn't .... She is doing better today.
(Qena 2014 / Sharkia - Fakous 2019)
a. cloudy   b. cold   c. happy   d. serious

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. hot - cold - warm - start (Cairo 2018 / Menofia - Menouf 2018) (..........)
2. start - family - hear - go (..........)
3. home - park - zoo - flu (..........)
4. seat - sister - chair - table (..........)
5. Which - Who - family - Where (..........)

5 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

جاء في عدة امتحانات

Write an email to your friend Ali telling him that your sister is ill. She has the flu in the hospital. Your name is Hany and your email address is hany@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ali@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....

(Kafr El-Sheikh - Sedi Salem 2018 / Assiut - AboTig 2019)

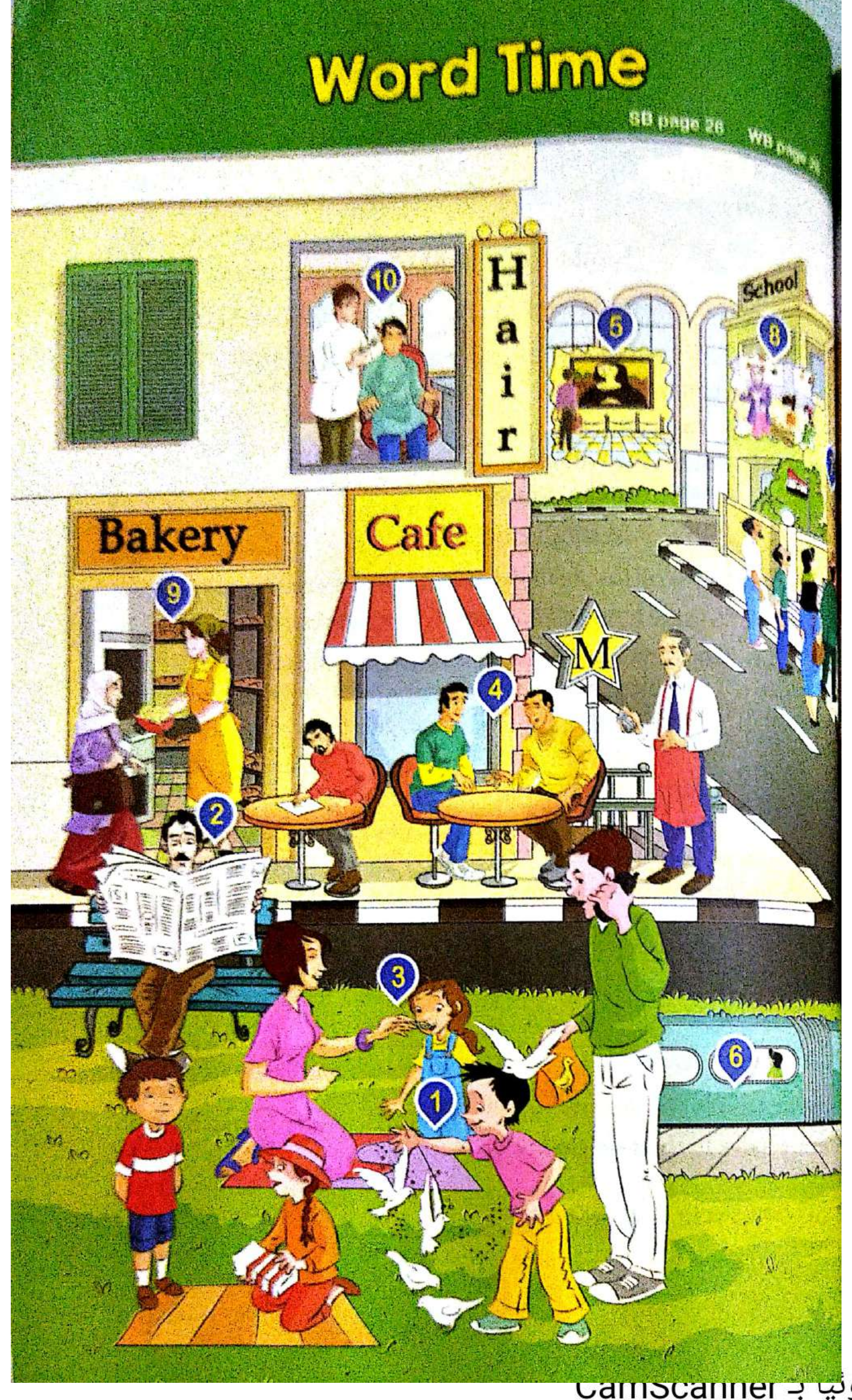
6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Maybe. It s getting cloudy (Cairo - Zawia 2020)

....

2. How s your family, Kamal (Qalyoubia - Benha 2019)

....


Word Time
SB page 26
WB page
Hair
School
Bakery
Cafe
M
10
5
8
9
4
2
3
1
6

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

Key Vocabulary — Daily activities

أنشطة يومية

1 feed the birds



يطعم الطيور

2 read a newspaper

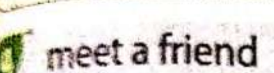


يقرأ جريدة

3 take medicine



يأخذ/يتناول دواء



4 meet a friend



يلتقى بـ/يقابل صديقًا

5 visit a museum



يزور متحفًا

6 take the underground



يركب / يستقل مترو الأنفاق

7 give a speech



يلقى خطاب

8 take a maths test



يؤدى اختبار مادة الرياضيات

9 bake bread



يخبز خبزًا

10 get a haircut



يحلق / يقص شعره





Key Vocabulary

letter	خطاب	message	رسالة
café	مقهى	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضي		Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
bake	يخبز	baked		feed	يطعم	fed
visit	يزور	visited		read	يقرأ	read
				take	يأخذ	took
				meet	يقابل	met
				get	يحصل على	got
				write	يكتب	wrote
				give	يعطى	gave

B Point and say the words. اشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

A : May I speak to Walid, please ?

B : I'm sorry. He's not in right now.

A : Can you take a message ?

B : Sure. Who's calling ?

A : This is Esam. I'll be late for lunch today. I'll see him at two o'clock.



C Listen and point. استمع واشر إلى المتحدثين.

Boy : What are you doing ?

Girl : I'm writing a letter to Emiley Chen.



Waiter : How much water did you have ?

Man : We had two bottles of water.

Waiter : How many pieces of apple pie did you have ?

Man : We had two pieces of apple pie.



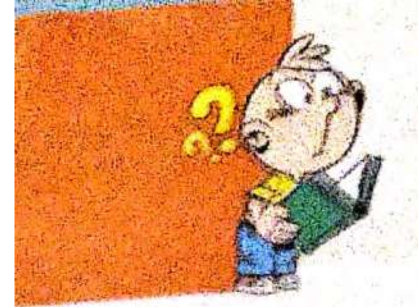
Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you .... bread ? *(Alexandria - Montazah 2020)*
   a. go b. bake c. play d. come
2. Maged will .... a speech tomorrow. *(Menia - Deir Mawas 2020)*
   a. give b. meet c. feed d. visit
3. In the park, children .... the birds.
   a. bake b. tell c. feed d. wear
   (The New Valley 2016 / Port Said 2017 / Assiut - Manfalut 2019)
4. My brother is going to .... a haircut. *(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)*
   a. get b. take c. give d. bake
5. Alaa is going to take a maths .... on Sunday.
   a. speech b. test c. haircut d. medicine
6. I always take the .... to my school.
   a. haircut b. test c. underground d. medicine
7. Reem is ill. She .... medicine. *(Assiut 2016)*
   a. reads b. eats c. bakes d. takes

Master your Term





General
Exercises on Word Time

• Understand • Apply

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. English - maths - underground - Arabic (Menofia - Shibin El-Kom 2018 / Alexandria - Borg El-Arab 2019) (..........)
2. message - April - May - June (Sohag 2016) (..........)
3. train - the underground - car - medicine (..........)
4. give - get - take - newspaper (..........)
5. baker - teacher - test - dentist (..........)

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ali is a student. He always gets up early from Sunday to Thursday to go to school. He takes the underground to school. He does his homework in the evening. On Fridays, he visits his friends and goes to the theatre to see shows. He sometimes watches football matches with his friends on Saturdays. They are always happy together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali goes to school .... days a week.
   a. four b. five c. six d. two
2. The opposite of "early" is "..........".
   a. lazy b. late c. good d. bad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ali go to school?

....

4. When do they watch football matches?

....

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:



"Daily activities"

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. are - **The students** - test - taking - a maths.

2. birds - she - going to - the - **Is** - feed ?

(Cairo - El Sayda Zeinab 2018 / Behera - Etay Al - Baroud 2019) (Cairo - Helwan 2020)

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i'll see him at two o clock.

2. Who did you meet in cairo *(Gharbia - El Santa 2020)*



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالى

أهم المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى درس الـ **(WORD TIME)**

feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	visit a museum	يزور متحف
read the newspaper	يقرأ الجريدة	take the underground	يستقل المترو
take medicine	يأخذ الدواء	get a haircut	يقص شعره
meet a friend	يلتقى بصديق	give a speech	يلقى خطاب

Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 27&28 WB pages 27&2[illegible]

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

1 Once a day مرة واحدة يوميًا

	8:00	9:00	10:00	11:00	12:00	1:00	2:00	3:00	4:00
Monday				**■**					

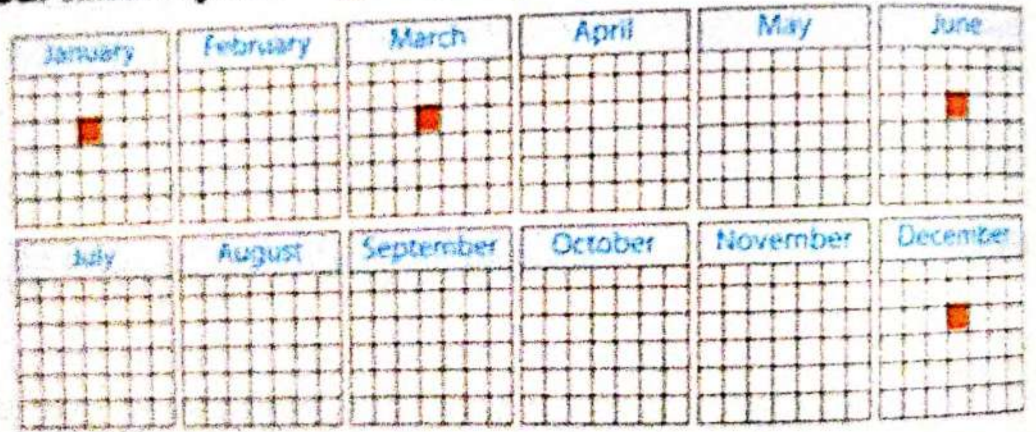
2 Twice a week مرتان أسبوعيًا

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
	■			**■**		

3 Three times a month ثلاث مرات شهريًا

June						
Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
					1	2
3	4	**5**	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	**14**	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	**25**	26	27	28	29	30

4 Four times a year أربعة مرات سنويًا



(B) Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

How often do you / does she read a newspaper ?

I read / She reads a newspaper once a month.



Language Focus شاهد وتعلم

How often .... ? كم مرة...؟

⭐ تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل ما فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

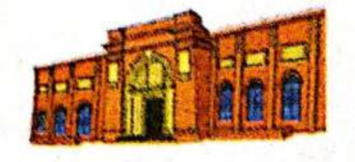
How often + do + I /you /they /we/ اسم جمع OR does + he /she /it/ اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

◂ للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية :

once twice three times four times	a day a week a month a year

always usually often	sometimes hardly ever never

◂ لاحظ أن : (a) تستخدم بمعنى (كل/ فى كل) قبل (day - week - month - year).



ex. How often do you visit the museum ?

I visit the museum three times a year.



ex. How often does he take medicine ?

He takes medicine twice a day.

Exercise on Language Focus

* Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He feeds the birds twice .... day.
   a. some b. in c. a d. the
2. They .... a newspaper once a month. *(Giza - Al-Omranyah 2019)*
   a. read b. reads c. are reading d. reading
3. I take the underground .... a day.
   a. two b. twice c. second d. three
   (Qalyoubia 2017 / Menofia - Shibeen El-Kom 2018)
4. How .... do you get a sunburn ? - Twice a year.
   a. often b. much c. many d. old
   (Beheira 2017)
5. How often .... you read a newspaper ?
   a. do b. does c. are d. is
6. Salma visits the museum four .... a year.
   a. times b. time c. twice d. once
   (Menia 2016)
7. My father .... medicine twice a day.
   a. take b. takes c. taking d. don't take
8. I .... a haircut twice a month.
   a. gets b. get c. getting d. doesn't get

(C) Look at page (26). Listen and point.

انظر الى الصورة فى كتاب الطالب صفحة ٢٦ ثم استمع واشر.

A : How often does he get a haircut ?

B : He gets a haircut twice a month.



Practice Time

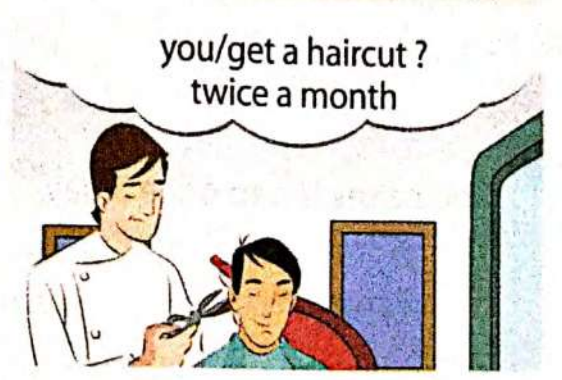
A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How often do you visit a museum ? - I visit a museum four times a year.

1. How often do you get a haircut ?

I get a haircut twice a month.



2. How often does she take medicine ?

She takes medicine three times a day.



3. How often does he feed the birds ?

....
....



4. How often does he meet his friends ?

....
....

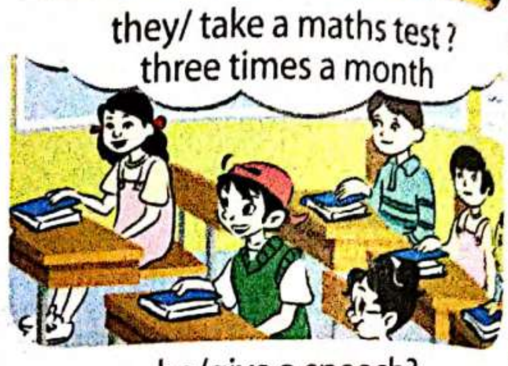


you/take the underground?
five times a week

5
How often do you take the underground ?
We take the underground five times a week.

she/bake bread?
once a day

6
....?
She bakes bread once a day.



7
....?
They take a maths test three times a month.



8
How often does he give a speech ?
He gives a speech four times a year.

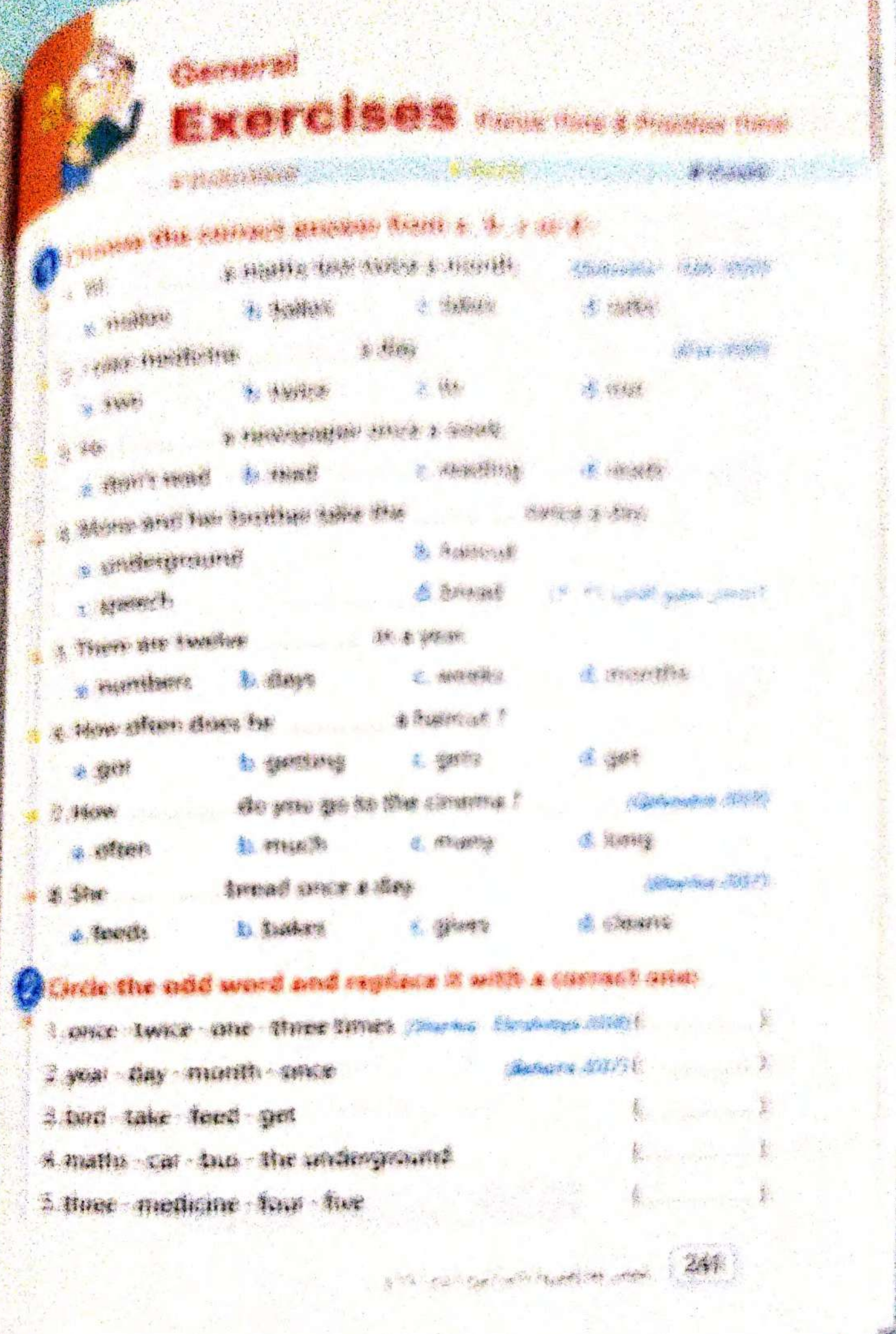
B Look at page (26). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (٢٦) فى كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How often does she bake bread ?

She bakes bread twice a day.





General

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ...... a maths test twice a month.
   a. [illegible] b. [illegible] c. [illegible] d. [illegible]
2. I take medicine ...... a day.
   a. two b. twice c. to d. one
3. He ...... a newspaper once a week.
   a. don't read b. read c. reading d. reads
4. Mona and her brother take the ...... twice a day.
   a. underground b. haircut
   c. speech d. bread
5. There are twelve ...... in a year.
   a. numbers b. days c. weeks d. months
6. How often does he ...... a haircut?
   a. got b. getting c. gets d. get
7. How ...... do you go to the cinema?
   a. often b. much c. many d. long
8. She ...... bread once a day.
   a. feeds b. bakes c. gives d. cleans

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. once - twice - one - three times (..........)
2. year - day - month - once (..........)
3. bird - take - feed - get (..........)
4. maths - car - bus - the underground (..........)
5. three - medicine - four - five (..........)

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your school day"



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. feeds - **Heba** - the - a day - once - birds. *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)*

....

2. does - get - he - **How** - often - a haircut ? *(Qalyoubia - Obour 2020)*

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how often do you visit the Egyptian Museum

....

2. He doesn t take my English books

....

Reading & Your Time

SB pages 29&30 WB pages 29&30

Key Vocabulary

crazy	متحير/ مجنون	older	أكبر سنًا
little	صغير السن/ قليل	fair	عادل / منصف
pest	شخص مزعج	attention	انتباه / اهتمام
bother	يضايق / يزعج	spend time	يقضى وقتًا
patient	صبور	without	بدون

Notes

1. going crazy — يصبح حائرًا

تستخدم كلمة (crazy) بمعنى مجنون ولكن فى هذا الخطاب تأتى بمعنى شخص يشعر بالحيرة ويبحث عن حل لمشكلته.

2. without بدون + (inf. + ing)

- He takes my things without asking.

Active Vocabulary

problem	مشكلة	mum	أم
dear	عزيزى/عزيزتى	brother	أخ
because	لأن	but	لكن
all the time	طوال الوقت	grow up	يكبر / ينمو
friend	صديق	first	الأول
room	حجرة	some	بعض
things	أشياء	tell ... to	يخبر أن

Notes

1. tell (someone) to + inf. المصدر — ١. يستخدم بمعنى يخبر (شخص) أن ....

- Sarah told me to study hard.

2. have to + inf. المصدر — ٢. يجب ان ....

- He has to ask first. — يجب أن يطلب أولًا.

3. have a problem — ٣. لديه/ عنده مشكلة

- She has a big problem. — هى لديها مشكلة كبيرة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
follow يتبع	followed	tell يخبر	told
ask يسأل/يطلب	asked	spend يقضى	spent
love يحب	loved	find يجد	found
use يستخدم	used	grow up يكبر/ينمو	grew up
bother يضايق / يزعج	bothered	go into يدخل	went into
borrow يستعير	borrowed	forget ينسى	forgot

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. follow me	١. يتتبعنى
2. It's not fair !	٢. هذا ليس عدلًا !
3. He wants your attention.	٣. يريد جذب انتباهك.
4. What can I do ?	٤. ما الذى أستطيع فعله ؟

Reading Time

Dear Sarah

SB page 29

Introduction : مقدمة

"Dear Sarah" is a letter from a newspaper. Someone wrote it to tell Sarah about a problem.

"عزيزتى سارة" هو خطاب من جريدة. كتبه شخص ما لكى يخبر سارة عن مشكلة.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. A girl is thirteen years old.
١- تبلغ البنت ثلاثة عشر عامًا.
2. She has a big problem.
٢- هى لديها مشكلة كبيرة.
3. Her brother is a pest.
٣- أخوها شخص مزعج.
4. He follows her all the time and always bothers her.
٤- هو يتتبعها طوال الوقت ودائمًا يضايقها.
5. Her mother tells her to be patient.
٥- أخبرتها والدتها بأن تكون صبورة.

8 Listen and read along.

Dear Sarah

Dear Sarah,

I am thirteen years old and I have a big problem. My little brother is a **pest** (1)! He follows me all the time and always **bothers** (2) me and my friends. He goes into my room and takes my things without asking. My mum tells me to be **patient** (3) because I am older. It's not **fair** (4)! What can I do ?

Going Crazy



Dear Crazy,

Your little brother loves you very much and wants your **attention** (5). Spend time with him. Tell him he can use your things but he has to ask first. Help him find some friends. And don't forget, he will **grow up** (6)!

Sarah

Check Vocabulary

(1) شخص مزعج
(2) يضايق / يزعج
(3) صبور
(4) عادل / منصف
(5) انتباه / أهتمام
(6) يكبر / ينمو

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a big .... My little brother is a pest.
   a. time　b. idea　c. park　d. problem
2. I'd like to be a teacher when I grow ....
   a. up　b. at　c. on　d. of
3. Rodina is going to .... a good time in Alexandria.
   a. spend　b. follow　c. ask　d. eat
4. Your brother .... you very much. *(Gharbia 2020)*
   a. adds　b. starts　c. colours　d. loves
5. He always bothers us. He is a .... *(Alexandria - Amreya 2020)*
   a. best　b. pest　c. past　d. post

B Listen and circle True or False.

1. Crazy is thirteen years old. True False
2. Crazy is younger than her brother. True False
3. Her brother bothers their mother. True False
4. Her brother borrows her things without asking. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

1. What is Crazy's problem ?

....

2. Who does Crazy's brother bother ?

....

3. Who tells Crazy to be patient ?

....

4. What does Crazy's brother want ?

....

Dear Sarah

WB page 29

Introduction : مقدمة

"Dear Sarah" is a letter from a newspaper. Hanaa and Shaimaa wrote it to tell Sarah about Hossam who always bothers them.

"عزيزتى سارة" هو خطاب من جريدة كتبته هناء وشيماء ليخبرا سارة عن حسام الذى دائمًا ما يضايقهم.

اقرأ النص فى صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. How often do you read a newspaper ?

....

2. How often do you get a haircut ?

....

3. How often do you visit a museum ?

....

4. How often do you feed the birds ?

....

B Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

أسأل أصدقائك واكتب أسماءهم وضع دائرة حول نعم أم لا.

Do you take medicine once a day ?

	Name	Yes / No
1. take medicine once a day	Does Nabil take medicine once a day ?	(Yes) No
2. read a newspaper once a week		Yes No
3. get a haircut once a month		Yes No

C Review. Read and write the answers.

راجع. اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever visit a museum ?

....

2. Do you like feeding the birds ?

....

3. How often do you give a speech ?

....

4. Is there an underground in your town ?

....



General
Exercises Reading & Your Time

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. pest - car - crazy - patient (Sharkia - Mashtoul El Souq 2019) ( )
2. follow - parents - ask - take ( )
3. bother - room - school - park ( )
4. pest - brother - mother - sister ( )
5. grow up - spend - fair - forget ( )

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Adel. I follow my older brother Ashraf and his friends all the time. One day, Ashraf invited his friend Kareem to play. When Ashraf and Kareem went outside to play basketball, I went to Ashraf's room and took a comic book.

When I finished reading, I followed Ashraf and Kareem to listen to music. Ashraf said, "You always bother me! You are a pest." I didn't know what a pest was. I found my mum and asked "What's a pest ?" My mum said, "A pest bothers people." Then I asked. "Am I a pest ?"

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adel went to Ashraf's room and took a/an .... book.
   a. comic b. Arabic c. English d. science
2. A pest .... people.
   a. helps b. likes c. bothers d. plays

B. Answer the following:

3. When did Adel follow Ashraf and Kareem ?

....

4. What did Ashraf call Adel ?

....

3 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

إجابة هذه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونى مكونة من سبع جمل

Write an email to your friend Asmaa telling her about your little sister Magy who is a pest. Your name is Sara Ramy. Your email address is lsararamy@gmail.com and your friend's email address is asmaahmed@hotmail.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

(Giza-Al-Haram 2018)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. SB Crazy's - is - problem - **What** ? *(Qena 2020)*

....

2. a pest - **My little** - is - brother - bothers me - and. *(Cairo - Heliopolis 2019)*

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is omnia older than Basma? *(Aswan 2020)*

....

2. my little brother is a pest *(Gharbia 2020)*

....



How to write

Unit 5

Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تعمل على استرجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

1. How often do you visit a museum ?
   - I visit a museum four times a year.
2. How often does he feed the birds ?
   - He feeds the birds once a day.

Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

speech - friend - get



1. How often do you .... a haircut?



2. He gives a .... once a day.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word :

two - does - twice

1. How often .... she take medicine ?
2. We take a maths test .... a week.

4 Your idea web

Choose and complete the idea web.

do - feeds - does - once

..... you meet a friend ?	**How often**	..... she feed the birds ?
I meet a friend ..... a week.		She ..... the birds twice a day.

5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوع

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرا على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني

Read, cut and stick.

To : nada@gmail.com
From : maha@gmail.com
Subject : My daily activities

Cut & Paste here
from page 295

Writing checklist

1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
2. My sentences end with a full stop.
3. My words are in the correct order.



تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

1 الجمل الخبرية

1. today – doing – is – better – **She**.
2. meets – **He** – friend – once – his – a week.

	فاعل	فعل	باقى الجملة .
1		is doing	
2			

2 الجمل الأمرية

1. take – asking – without – things – **Don't** – my.
2. seat, – **Have** – a – Kamal.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقى الجملة .
1		take	
2			

3 الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. you – the – do – feed – birds – **How often** ?
2. does – **What** – her – want – brother ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1					
2			her brother		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you – think – rain – going to – it's – **Do** ?
2. Salma – **Does** – a – take – test – maths ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1				
2				

Test your skills

Unit 5

If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد

قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation. Listen and tick (✓).

استمع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة التالية. استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Maybe. It's getting cloudy.

- ◯ How is your family?
- ◯ Do you think it's going to rain?

2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

2 Which word goes in the sentence ?

He always bothers us. He is a ____ .

- ◯ pest
- ◯ best

3 Writing skill

3 Write two sentences about your little brother.

اكتب جملتين عن أخيك الصغير.

....

....

My Spelling Test

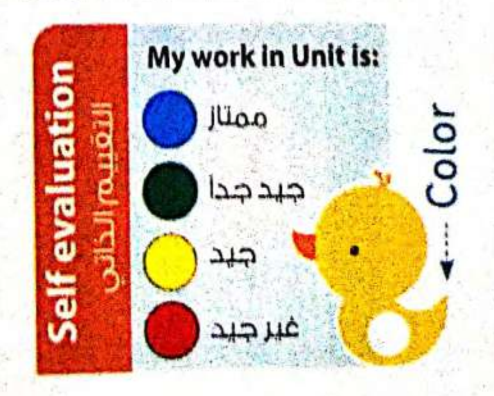
Look and write.

1. ....

2. ....

3. ....

4. ....





Review on Unit 5

مراجعة على Unit 5 فى ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy!
Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.
Kamal : Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.
Mr Samy : That's right. It's 23 degrees!
Kamal : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?
Mr Samy : Maybe. It's getting cloudy. So, how's your family, Kamal ?
Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that.
Kamal : It's not serious. She's doing better today.
Mr Samy : Good!
Kamal : Look! It's starting to rain.
Mr Samy : I'd better go home. Take care, Kamal.
Kamal : Bye, Mr Samy.

2. Vocabulary

- bake bread يخبز خبزًا
- read a newspaper يقرأ جريدة
- meet a friend يلتقى بـ/ يقابل صديقًا
- take a maths test يأخذ / يؤدى اختبار رياضيات
- feed the birds يطعم الطيور
- take medicine يأخذ/ يتناول دواء
- visit a museum يزور متحف
- take the underground يستقل مترو الانفاق
- give a speech يلقى خطاب
- get a haircut يحصل على قصّة شعر / يقص شعره

3. Language Focus

* Adverbial phrases of frequency
العبارات الظرفية للتكرار

once a day / twice a week / three times a month / five times a year / always / often / hardly ever / never

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

للسؤال عن عدد مرات القيام بالفعل تستخدم

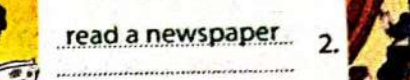
- How often do you visit the Pyramids ?
- I visit the Pyramids once a year.

⊙ **Circle the mistakes and write:**

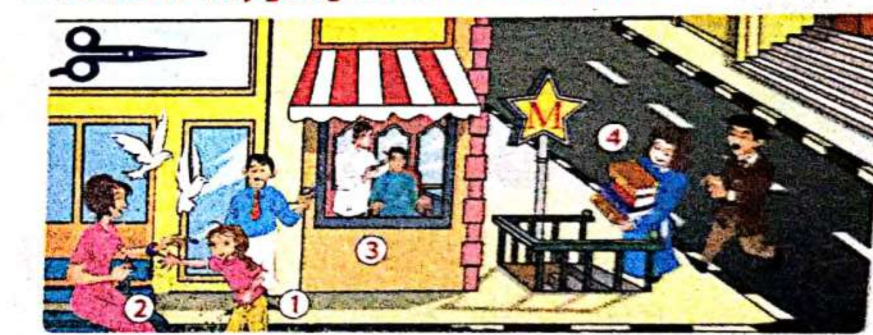
1. Hello, Kamal. Have (the sit)
   Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.
2. Thanks. Oh! (It) cold (tonight).
   Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.
3. That's (wrong). It's 23 (degree) !
   That's right. It's 23 degrees!
4. Wow! Do you (know) it's (wants) to rain ?
   Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?
5. Maybe. It's (going) cloudy.
   Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
6. So, (what's) your family, Kamal ?
   So, How's your family, Kamal ?
7. They're (five). But my sister (have) the flu.
   They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
8. I'm (happy) to hear that.
   I'm sorry to hear that.
9. It's (no) serious. She's doing better (yesterday).
   It's not serious. She's doing better today.



A. Look and write :

1.  read a newspaper
2.  give a speech
3. visit a museum
4.  meet a friend
5. bake bread
6.  take a maths test

B. What are they going to do ? Look and write :



1. She's going to feed the birds.
2. She's going to take medicine.
3. He's going to get a haircut.
4. They're going to take the underground.

Workbook On Focus Time page 27

A. Use the code to write the words:

1 = once	2 = twice	3 = three times	4 = four times
D = a day	W = a week	M = a month	Y = a year

1. 1 D = once a day
2. 3 W =
3. 2 M =
4. 3 Y =
5. 4 D =
6. 2 W =

B. Look at Heba's schedule. Write True or False:



= feed the birds
= take medicine
= take the underground
= bake bread

1. Heba feeds the birds once a week. True
2. Heba takes medicine three times a day. False
3. Heba bakes bread three times a week. True

C. Look at B. Read and write:

1. How often does she take medicine ?
   She takes medicine
2. How often does she take the underground ?
   She takes the underground

Workbook On Practice Time page 28

UNIT 5

A. Look and write :

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30				

= visit a museum
= get a haircut
= read a newspaper
= do the laundry
= give a speech
= go to a restaurant

1. How often does he do the laundry ?
2. How often does he visit a museum ?
3. How often does he get a haircut ?
   He gets a haircut once a month.
4. How often does he read a newspaper ?
   He reads a newspaper five times a week.
5. How often does he give a speech ?
   He gives a speech once a week. / four times a month.
6. How often does he go to the restaurant ?
   He goes to the restaurant three times a month.

Workbook On Reading Time page 29

A. Read.

Dear Sarah



Dear Sarah,

There is a pest in our class at school. His name is Hosam. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. Our teacher told us to be patient. It's not fair! What can we do?

Hanaa and Shaimaa.

Dear Hanaa and Shaimaa,

Hosam bothers you because he wants your attention. Spend time with him. Help him find some friends.

Sarah

B. Read the question. Write the answer:

1. Who's a pest?
   Hosam is a pest.
2. Who told Hanaa and Shaimaa to be patient?
   Their teacher told them to be patient.
3. Why does the pest bother Hanaa and Shaimaa?
   Because he wants their attention.

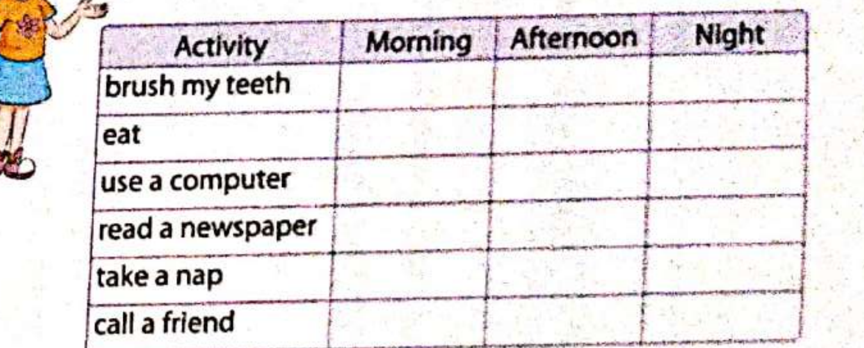
C. Read and match:

1. Hosam	- told them to be patient.	(4)
2. Sarah	- takes their things without asking.	(6)
3. Hanaa and Shaimaa	- says, "Help him find some friends."	(2)
4. Their teacher	- told them to spend time with Hosam.	(5)
5. Sarah	- is in Hanaa and Shaimaa's class.	(1)
6. Hosam	- say, "It's not fair!"	(3)

Workbook On Your Time page 30

A. Read and check:

Answers will vary.



Activity	Morning	Afternoon	Night
brush my teeth			
eat			
use a computer			
read a newspaper			
take a nap			
call a friend			

B. Read the question. Write the answer:

Answers will vary.

1.  How often do you get a haircut?
2.  How often do you bake bread?
3.  How often do you wash your hair?
4.  How often do you see a film?

Exam Language Bank



أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(الإسكندرية - منترة ٢٠١٩ - امتحان مجمع أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢١)

degree	درجة	get a haircut	يقص شعره
weather	الطقس	bake bread	يخبز خبزا
cloudy	غائم - ملبد بالغيوم	give a speech	يلقى خطاب
take medicine	يأخذ دواء	little	صغير السن
feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	pest	شخص مزعج
visit a museum	يزور متحفًا	attention	انتباه / اهتمام
take a maths test	يؤدى اختبار مادة الرياضيات		



2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(الجيزة - العمرانية ٢٠١٧ - امتحان مجمع أسيوط - صدفة ٢٠٢١)

1. How often(1) do you visit the museum ?
2. I visit the museum three times a year(2).

Check Language

(1) كم مرة..؟ للسؤال عن عدد المرات

(2) ظرف التكرار



3. Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها فى امتحانات سابقة :

(القاهرة - الزاوية ٢٠١٨ - المرج ٢٠٢٠)

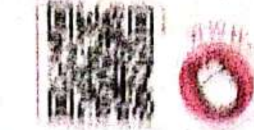
Questions	Answers
• Do you think it's going to rain ?	- Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
• How's your family ?	- They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
• Do you think that she had the flu ?	- Yes, I think so. But she is doing better today.

Test 9 on Unit 8

Understand ... Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations





A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. She takes medicine twice a week.
   b. She takes medicine three times a day. *(Qalyoubia 2017)*
2. a. Maybe. It's getting cold.
   b. Maybe. It's getting cloudy. *(Menofia 2014)*
3. a. How is your sister ?
   b. How is your mother ? *(Gharbia 2015)*
4. a. How often do you get a haircut ?
   b. How often do you feed the birds ?

(Alexandria 2017 / Cairo - Mataria 2018)

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy.
Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat. How's your (1) .... ?
Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the (2) ....
Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it (3) .... ?
Kamal : No, it isn't. She's doing (4) .... today.
Mr Samy : Good ! *(Alexandria 2015 / Qena 2019)*

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She .... bread once a day. *(Alexandria 2015)*
   a. feeds b. reads c. meets d. bakes
2. "A ...." is someone who bothers people. *(Qalyoubia 2014)*
   a. test b. nest c. best d. pest
3. I'd better .... home. *(Dakahlia - Belqas 2018 / Behira - El-Mahmoudia 2019)*
   a. go b. to go c. going d. goes



4. How often does she .... a museum ? ([illegible])
   a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
5. She's doing .... today. ([illegible])
   a. good b. better c. best d. bad
6. How .... do you give a speech ? (Minia 2019)
   a. old b. much c. often d. many
7. To help me with my problem, my mother tells me to be .... (المنيا ٢٠٢١)
   a. patient b. little c. older d. pest
8. I take medicine .... a day.
   a. two b. twice c. to d. too
   (Cairo - El-Maasreen & Dar El-Salam 2018)

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. February - March - Monday - December (Dakahlia - Mansoura 2018) (..............)
2. eat - with - write - follow (Sharkia 2018) (..............)
3. summer - rain - winter - spring (Qena 2018) (..............)
4. crazy - speech - old - cloudy (Menofia 2017) (..............)
5. dance - once - twice - three times (Assiut 2018) (..............)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

On Thursday, there was a baking class in our school. Alyaa made an apple pie. The next day, she took the pie, some pineapple juice and a cone of ice cream and went to the park. She ate, played and took a nap near the lake. She fed the birds and hurt her finger, but it wasn't serious. She went back home and she was happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Alyaa baked a / an .... on Thursday.
   a. orange juice b. apple pie c. bread d. cake
2. The next day, she went to the ....
   a. park b. school c. baking class d. restaurant

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did she feed ?

....

4. Where did Alyaa take a nap ?

....

(Suez 2014)

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"At the park"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Matrouh 2017 / Cairo - Al-Mataria 2018 / Souhag - Tema 2018 / Kafr El-Shiekh - Reyad 2019)

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. take - medicine - **How** - often - you - do ?

(Qena - Deshna 2020 / Menia - Samalout 2020)

....

2. a - month - I - a haircut - get - twice.

....

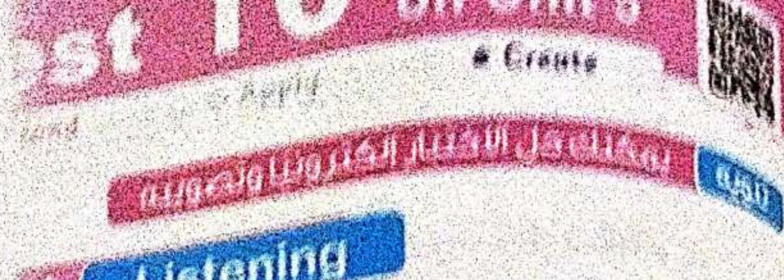
8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. it is cold today (Cairo - New Cairo 2020)

....

2. Can i help you carry this heavy bag (Alexandria - Amereya 2020)

....


A Listening

استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. He's fine, thanks.
   b. He's fine, thank you.
2. a. Noha bothers her sister.
   b. Noha bothers her friend.
3. a. How's your family, Kamal ?
   b. How's your sister, Mona ?
4. a. How often do you read the newspaper ?
   b. How often do you take a nap ?

استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل ete:

Ahmed : Oh! It's cold today.
Samy : That's right. It's 23 (1) .... !
Ahmed : Wow! Do you (2) .... it's going to rain ?
Samy : Look ! It's starting to rain.
Ahmed : How can I (3) .... back home ?
Samy : You can (4) .... a taxi.

B Reading

ct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He .... the park once a month.
   a. visited b. visiting c. visits d. visit
2. How .... do you read a newspaper ?
   a. many b. high c. old d. often
3. It's .... rain. let's go.
   a. go b. going to c. goes d. went
4. My father reads the .... every morning.
   a. address b. pictures c. newspaper d. films

5. In the park, children .... the birds.
   a. feed   b. take   c. bake   d. tell
6. She tells her sister to be .... because she is older.
   a. crazy   b. big   c. small   d. patient
7. Hoda loves you and .... your attention.
   a. wants   b. want   c. wanted   d. wanting
8. Mona is ill. She has the ....
   a. meat   b. flu   c. ball   d. pest

4 Circle the odd word and replace it wi

1. pest - car - patient - crazy (..................)
2. music - art - English - serious (..................)
3. wig - wear - make - take (..................)
4. father - mother - bother - sister (..................)
5. May - March - July - Ali (..................)

5 Read the passage and answer the qu

There is a pest in Hanaa's class at school. Her name is Aya. She follows Hanaa all the time and always bothers her. Her teacher, Shaimaa told her to be patient. It's not fair! What can she do ? Her friend Sara told her that Aya bothers her because she wants her attention. She told Hanaa to spend time with her and find some friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is a pest.
   a. Hanaa   b. Aya   c. Shaimaa   d. Sara
2. Her teacher told her to be ....
   a. angry   b. happy   c. patient   d. fair

B. Answer the following:

3. What did Sara tell Hanaa to do ?
....
4. Why does the pest bother Hanaa ?
....

C Writing

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

Write an email to your friend Ahmed to tell him about your family. Your name is Hatem. Your email address is hatem@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. often - you - **How** - see - do - a film ?

....

2. us - told - **Our teacher** - be - patient - to.

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. How s your family, Hend

....

2. he doesn t take the underground on Sunday.

....



Stop here!

1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students اختبار مُصغّر للأزهر الشريف

1 Read and circle:

1. How often do you read a newspaper?
   a. I read a newspaper once a day.
   b. I take a nap once a day.
2. What is the weather like today?
   a. It's 23 degrees. b. It's cold.
3. He's fine, thank you.
   a. How is your family? b. How is your father?

2 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

Guiding words:

meet – park – talk – football

....

....

....

....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبِّق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

- **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. you - think - <u>Do</u> - going - it's - rain - to ?

....

2. town - your - in - <u>Is</u> - there - an underground ?

....



Quiz 4 on Units 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣، ٤ و ٥)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات السابقة.

Model A

Marks

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Adam walked to school .... himself.
   a. from b. of c. by d. under
2. At the restaurant, you can choose food from a ....
   a. menu b. table c. desk d. pot
3. John Montagu .... the sandwich.
   a. went b. read c. did d. invented
4. Last week, Farah .... an accident.
   a. have b. has c. had d. having
5. Do you want to .... some bread ?
   a. go b. bake c. meet d. come

Model B

Marks

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I'd better .... home now.
   a. go b. to go c. went d. going
2. I'll .... you my number.
   a. go b. do c. give d. call
3. You need to get a .... because your hair is very long.
   a. sandwich b. box c. drink d. haircut
4. How .... fruit salad did you have ?
   a. much b. tall c. many d. old
5. I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache.
   a. supermarket b. dentist c. grocer d. bank



Review
Conversation Time

SB page 31

Key Vocabulary

clerk	موظف	video	فيديو
special	خاص	matter	قضية / مسألة
exhibition	عرض	sick	مريض
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	order	يطلب - طلب
tour	رحلة / جولة	a cup of	فنجان من
garlic	ثوم	a glass of	كوب من
garlic soup	شوربة ثوم	kinds of	أنواع من
give	يعطي	bored	يشعر بالملل
stomach ache	ألم بالمعدة	diary	مذكرات يومية

A Listen and circle the correct picture.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة.

1. **Clerk** : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you ?
Kareem : Hi. Do you have a special exhibition today ?
Clerk : Yes, we do. It's an exhibition of old photographs of Cairo.
Kareem : Are there any tours ?
Clerk : Yes. Tours are at 11:00, 2:30 and 5:00.
Kareem : Thanks for your help.
Clerk : You're welcome.

a.


b.


c.


2. Waiter : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Mrs Samy : I think so. I'll have a bowl of chicken soup.

Waiter : I'm sorry. We don't have chicken soup today. We have garlic soup.

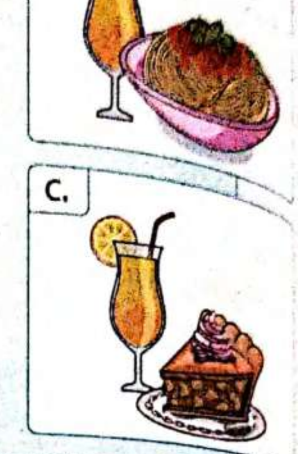
Mrs Samy : Oh, I don't like garlic. Hmm. What's today's special ?

Waiter : Spaghetti and meatballs.

Mrs Samy : Sounds good. I'll have spaghetti and orange juice.

Waiter : Okay. Spaghetti and meatballs, and a glass of orange juice. I'll be right back.

a. b. c.



3. Baker : Hi. Can I help you ?

Man : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have ?

Baker : We have lemon, peach and cherry.

Man : How about apple ? I love apple pie.

Baker : Sorry, we're out of apple.

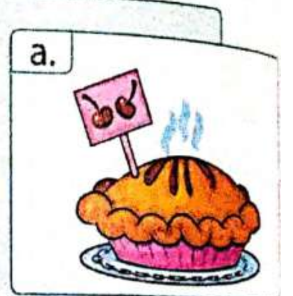
Man : Oh ! How much are the cherry pies ?

Baker : They're 10 L.E each.

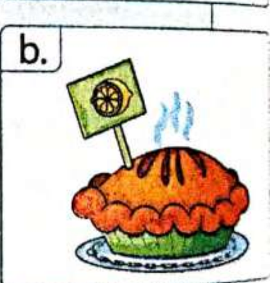
Man : Okay, I'll take a cherry pie.

Baker : Great!

a.



b.



c.



4. Mrs Samy : Hello ?
Woman : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please ?
Mrs Samy : I'm sorry. She's not in right now.
Woman : Can you take a message ?
Mrs Samy : Sure. Who's calling ?
Woman : This is Mrs. Doaa at the New Cairo Library. We have sports in Cairo now.
Mrs Samy : Is that a book ?
Woman : No, It's a video.
Mrs Samy : Okay. I'll give her the message.

a.


b.


c.


5. Samy : Hi, Kareem!
Kareem : Hi, Samy. How are you ?
Samy : Fine, thanks. How are you ?
Kareem : I'm good. How's your family ?
Samy : My mother and sister are sick.
Kareem : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter ?
Samy : They have the flu.
Kareem : Oh. Is your brother sick, too ?
Samy : No, he isn't sick.
Kareem : Good!
Samy : Well, I'll see you later, Kareem!
Kareem : Okay. Bye!







(B) Listen and circle the correct answer.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1

Clerk : Cairo Theatre. How can I help you ?

Mona : Hi. What time is the film today ?

Clerk : 4:15.

Mona : 4:50 ?

Clerk : No. 4:15.

Mona : Oh. Thank you.

4:10 4:15 4:50

2

Waiter : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Mrs Samy : I think so. I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.

Dr Samy : I'll have a piece of apple pie, too, and a cup of coffee.

Mona : I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.

Waiter : All right. That's three pieces of apple pie, one glass of orange juice, and two cups of coffee.

Mrs Samy : No, no. We want two glasses of orange juice and one cup of coffee.

Waiter : Okay. I'll be right back.

2 glasses 3 glasses 4 glasses

1

Baker : Hi. Can I help you ?

Woman : Yes, please. I'd like a lemon pie and an apple pie.

Baker : Okay. That's 30 pounds.

Woman : 13 pounds ?

Baker : No, 30 pounds.

Woman : Okay. Here you are.

Baker : Thank you.

13	33	30

4

Mrs Samy : Hello !

Girl : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please ?

Mrs Samy : I'm sorry. She's not in right now.

Girl : Can you take a message, please ? This is Emiley Chin.
My number is 987-9876.

Mrs Samy : Did you say 987-9867 ?

Girl : No, it's 987-9876.

Mrs Samy : Got it. I'll give her the message.

987-9867	978-9876	987-9876





Review
Sokkar's Diary

SB page 37



Listen and read along. Then look at the pictures and write the days of the week.

Sokkara's Diary

Day : Monday......

Today, I went to a restaurant with Sokkar. He had three slices of roast beef, three bowls of chicken soup, and three pieces of apple pie. Sokkar loves eating! He eats too much. He's always in the mood for ice cream, too.



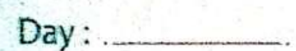
Friday

Day : 

Today I was busy. I bought groceries, did the laundry, and ironed all my clothes. Then, I baked bread and made dinner. Sokkar visited me and ate all the bread. He never has dinner by himself!



Monday

Day : 

Today Sokkar and I visited the Food School. We took the underground. There was a baking class. Sokkar baked an apple pie. Sokkar sliced apples by himself. He hurt his finger. It wasn't serious.



Tuesday

Day : 

Sokkar and I walked to the park today. We took a nap near the lake. Sokkar got a sunburn. Then we fed the birds and Sokkar fell into the lake. Tomorrow I'm going to stay home by myself!



Thursday



Review
Sokkar's Diary

SB page 44

1 Listen and read along. Then look at the pictures and write the days of the week.

Day:

Today I went to a restaurant with Sokkara. She had one bowl of fruit salad and a cup of coffee. She doesn't eat enough. She's too thin. Tomorrow I'm going to go to her house and make dinner with her.



Thursday

Day: Wednesday

I ate too much at Sokkara's house on Tuesday night. I had a stomach ache this morning. I had a bowl of ice cream for lunch. It was delicious! Ice cream is the best medicine.



Monday

Day:

There was a baking class at the Food School today. I made an apple pie. I had an accident. I hurt my finger. But my pie was delicious. Sokkara liked it, too. I'm happy.



Wednesday

Day: Saturday

It was 40 degrees today. I went to Sokkara's house. She wanted to stay home by herself. I went to the park by myself. It wasn't fun. Then Sokkara came to the park because she was bored at home. We had a good time.



Saturday



Review
Word Time and Focus Time

SB page 54

A Read and write the words.

باستخدام الصور اقرأ واكتب الكلمات الناقصة .



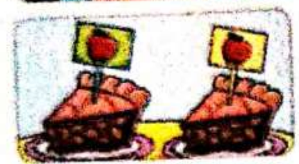
1. Does he ever take a nap?
Yes, he o f t e n takes a nap.



2. Your teeth hurt. You go to the ______.



3. I can i r o n a s h i r t by myself.



4. I'll have two pieces of a p p l e p i e.



5. She had a glass of orange ______.



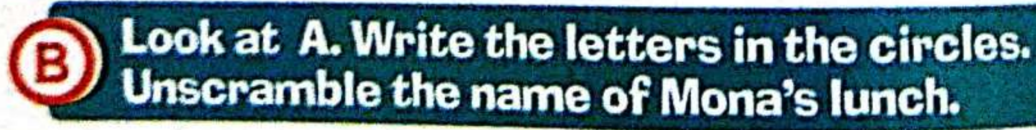
6. There's a library beside the ______.



7. I ______ ______ by myself.



8. There's a ______ near the train station.



B Look at A. Write the letters in the circles. Unscramble the name of Mona's lunch.

أكتب الحروف التى عليها دائرة فى تمرين (A)وأعد ترتيب الكلمات. اكتب الطعام الذى ستأكله منى فى الغداء.

General Revision on Units 4 and 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٤ و٥

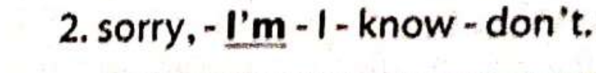


Mini-Test on Unit 4

If you got , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على  غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually .... a sunburn when I go to Alexandria.
   a. get   b. play   c. give   d. eat
2. Her hair isn't long. She's wearing a ....
   a. dress   b. wig   c. nap   d. shirt
3. My father .... a sports car every day.
   a. drive   b. drives   c. drove   d. driving
4. Qaitbay .... is in Alexandria.
   a. Museum   b. Restaurant
   c. Theatre   d. Citadel
5. .... she ever take a nap ?
   a. Do   b. Does   c. Is   d. Are
6. I'll .... him your message.
   a. give   b. gives
   c. to give   d. gave
7. We usually .... to music.
   a. listens   b. listen
   c. listening   d. to listen
8. What's your phone .... ?
   - 758342.
   a. address   b. number
   c. book   d. house

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. you - **Can** - a message - take ?

   ....

2. sorry, - **I'm** - I - know - don't.

   ....

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is this Ali s pen?

   ....

2. We don t go to school on Friday

   ....

Mini-Test on Unit 5



If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She .... bread three times a week.
   a. plays b. reads c. bakes d. feeds
2. How often .... your sister feed the birds ?
   a. do b. does c. is d. has
3. .... does he visit a museum ?
   a. How much b. How often
   c. How many d. How long
4. He .... the zoo once a month.
   a. to visit b. visits c. visiting d. visit
5. She meets her friends .... a week.
   a. two b. once c. one d. times
6. He's studying hard for the maths ....
   a. school b. test c. art d. paper
7. Be .... with those who bother you.
   a. angry b. noisy c. patient d. happy
8. She didn't read the .... at school.
   a. books b. newspaper
   c. museum d. sunburn

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. is - **How** - your - family ?

....

2. always - the - takes - **He** - underground.

....

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"Meeting a friend"




....
....
....
....
....

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع كتاب الشرح

UNIT (1)

• **Listen and complete.** Page 32

Hala : Is it the Egyptian Museum ?
Receptionist : Yes, it is.
Hala : When are you open ?
Receptionist : We are open daily.
Hala : Thank you for your help.
Receptionist : You are welcome.

General Exercises on Conversation Time

• **Listen and complete.** Page 33

Mona : Where are you going ?
Ali : I am going to the Egyptian Museum.
Mona : How much does it cost to get in ?
Ali : It's two pounds for Egyptians.
Mona : Does that include the Mummy rooms ?
Ali : No, it doesn't.

Test (1) on Unit (1)

1 Listen and circle. Page 68

1. Where do you go on Friday ?
   - I go to the Egyptian Museum.
2. How much is the ticket ?
   - Ninety pounds.
3. Who invented the first ice cream churn ?
   - Nancy Johnson.
4. Where did the first ice cream factory open ?
   - It opened in Baltimore.

2 Listen and complete.

Adel : Is there a theatre near your house ?
Ali : No, there isn't. There is a museum.
Adel : What are its hours ?
Ali : It's open from 9:00 to 7:00.
Adel : How much does it cost to get in ?
Ali : It's five pounds.

Test (2) on Unit (1)

1 Listen and circle. Page 71

1. What are your hours ?
   - We're open from 10:00 to 8:00.
2. Where was he ?
   - At the library.
3. Are you open on Fridays ?
   - Yes, we are open daily.
4. What flavours are America's favourite?
   - Vanilla and chocolate.

2 Listen and complete.

Ahmed : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you ?
Sherif : Hi! What are your hours ?
Ahmed : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.
Sherif : Are you open on Fridays ?
Ahmed : Yes, we're open daily.
Sherif : Thank you for your help.

UNIT (2)

• **Listen and complete.** Page 80

Waiter : Hello! Are you ready to order?
Mona : I think so. I'll have a steak and a baked potato.
Waiter : Rare, medium or well done ?
Mona : Medium, please.
Waiter : How about a salad ?
Mona : Sounds good.

General Exercises on Conversation Time

• **Listen and circle.** Page 81

1. How about a salad ?
   - Sounds good.
2. What will you have ?
   - Spaghetti and meatballs.
3. What's today's special ?
   - Meat and rice.
4. What will the man have ?
   - He will have pizza.

General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

• **Listen and complete.** Page 105

Ahmed : Where did you have lunch yesterday ?
Hany : I had lunch at a new Italian restaurant.
Ahmed : Where is it ?
Hany : It's in Cairo.
Ahmed : What does it serve ?
Hany : It serves lunch and dinner.

Test (3) on Unit (2)

1 Listen and circle. Page 116

1. What will you have ?
   - Steak and salad.
2. How many bottles of water did you have ?
   - Two bottles.
3. Do you like meat ?
   - Yes, I do.
4. How much lemonade did they have ?
   - They had four cans of lemonade.

2 Listen and complete.

Ali : Hello. Are you ready to order ?
Ahmed : I think so.
Ali : How about meatballs ?
Ahmed : Sounds good. What's today's special ?
Ali : Chicken and spaghetti.
Ahmed : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti.

Test (4) on Unit (2)

1 Listen and circle. Page 119

1. How much bread did he have ?
   - He had six loaves of bread.
2. Are you ready to order ?
   - I think so. I'll have a steak.
3. How many glasses of orange juice do you have ?
   - Four glasses of orange juice.
4. What's today's special ?
   - Spaghetti and meatballs.

2 Listen and complete.

Waiter : May I take your order now ?
Ayman : I'd like an apple pie, please.
Waiter : Would you like something to drink ?
Ayman : Some tea, please.
Waiter : How do you like your tea ?
Ayman : Without sugar.

UNIT (3)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

1 Listen and circle. Page 130

1. What kinds of pies do you have ?
   - We have lemon, peach and apple.
2. How much are these ?
   - They are five pounds each.
3. Do you have any cherry pies ?
   - No, we're out of cherry pies.
4. What kinds of pies do you have ?
   - We have cherry, apple and orange.

2 Listen and complete.

Ahmed : Good morning. What kinds of pies do you have ?
Basem : We have lemon, peach and apple pies.
Ahmed : How much are the apple pies ?
Basem : They're five pounds each.
Ahmed : Okay. May I get one ?

[illegible] : Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

Test (5) on Unit (3)

1 Listen and circle. Page 164

1. What do you want ?
   - A lemon pie.
2. What kinds of pies do you have ?
   - We have lemon, peach and apple.
3. How much are the apple pies ?
   - They are five pounds each.
4. Can you ride a bike by yourself ?
   - Yes, I can.

2 Listen and complete.

Baker : Good morning. Can I help you ?
Nada : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?
Baker : We have lemon, cherry and apple pies .
Nada : How much is the lemon pie ?
Baker : It's five pounds.
Nada : Okay, I will take one.

Test (6) on Unit (3)

1 Listen and circle. Page 167

1. How much are the pies ?
   - They are ten pounds each.
2. How many pies have they got ?
   - They have got five pies.
3. Do you have any cherry pies ?
   - Yes, I do.
4. What do you have for lunch ?
   - We have fish and salad.

2 Listen and complete.

Rokaya : Good morning. Do you have any cherry pies ?
Nada : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.
Rokaya : How much are they ?
Nada : They're ten pounds each.
Rokaya : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies ?
Nada : They're five pounds each.

UNIT (4)

• Listen and circle. Page 180

1. Where is he ?
   - He is at the cinema.
2. Who's calling ?
   - This is Salwa Kamel.
3. What time will he be back ?
   - He will be back at ten.
4. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?
   - He isn't in right now.

General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Listen and complete. Page 181

Asmaa : Good morning.
Amany : Good morning.
Asmaa : May I speak to Nada , please ?
Amany : She is not in right now.
Asmaa : What time will she be back ?
Amany : I'm sorry. I don't know.

Test (7) on Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle. Page 214

1. Do you ever listen to music ?
   - Yes, I usually listen to music.
2. What time will she be back ?
   - I'm sorry. I don't know.
3. Does he wear a wig ?
   - No, he never wears a wig.
4. What time will he be back ?
   - He will be back at eight.

2 Listen and complete.

Maha : Hello ! May I speak to Nada, please ?
Rania : Hello! She isn't in right now.
Maha : What time will she be back ?
Rania : I'm sorry. I don't know.
Maha : Please, tell her that I will come back tomorrow.
Rania : Okay. I will tell her.

Test (8) on Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle. Page 217

1. What did she watch in a film studio ?
   - She watched the actors rehearse a scene.
2. Can I help you ?
   - Yes, please.
3. Do you ever have an accident ?
   - No, I don't.
4. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?
   - He isn't in right now.

2 Listen and complete.

Hany : Did you visit Alexandria ?
Samir : Yes, I did.
Hany : Who did you go with ?
Samir : I went with my family.
Hany : What did you visit there ?
Samir : I visited Alexandria Library.

UNIT (5)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

• **Listen and circle.** Page 228

1. What's the weather like ?
   - It's cold.
2. Is it hot today ?
   - Yes, it is.
3. Do you think it's going to rain ?
   - Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
4. How is your family ?
   - They're fine.

• **Listen and complete.**

Asmaa : Good morning, Amira.
Amira : Good morning, Asmaa.
Asmaa : How is your sister now ?
Amira : She is better.
Asmaa : Do you think that she had the flu ?
Amira : You are right.

Test (9) on Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle. Page 259

1. How often does she take medicine ?
   - She takes medicine twice a week.
2. Do you think it's going to rain ?
   - Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
3. How is your sister ?
   - She's ill.
4. How often do you feed the birds ?
   - Four times a day.

2 Listen and complete.

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy.
Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat. How's your family ?
Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it serious ?
Kamal : No, it isn't. She is doing better today.
Mr Samy : Good!

Test (10) on Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle. Page 262

1. How is your father ?
   - He's fine, thank you.
2. Who does Noha bother ?
   - Noha bothers her sister.
3. How's your family, Kamal ?
   - They are fine, thanks.
4. How often do you take a nap ?
   - I take a nap once a day.

2 Listen and complete.

Ahmed : Oh! It's cold today.
Samy : That's right. It's 23 degrees!
Ahmed : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?
Samy : Look! It's starting to rain.
Ahmed : How can I go back home ?
Samy : You can take a taxi.

Answers
of Main Book's Paragraphs & Emails

إجابات الموضوعات ورسائل البريد الإلكترونى فى كتاب الشرح

Unit (1)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 34

"The Egyptian Museum"

Last week, I visited the Egyptian Museum. It's in Cairo. It's a nice place. It is open daily. It is open from 9:00 to 7:00. The ticket costs two pounds. Children under five are free.

General Exercises on Word Time

Page 41

"My school"

I go to school early in the morning. My school is near my house. I always walk to school. I go to school with my friends. I like my teachers. My favourite subject is English. My school is clean.

General Exercises on Focus & Practice Time

Page 49

To :	ali@gmail.com
From :	amr@gmail.com
Subject :	My school library

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my school library. It is big. It is beside my class. It has a lot of books. Tell me about your library.

Yours,

Amr

General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 58

To :	mona@yahoo.com
From :	fatma@yahoo.com
Subject :	The ice cream history

Dear Mona,

How is your family ? I'm very happy to send you this email. The ice cream has a long history. Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn. Ice cream is one of America's favourite desserts. You can buy ice cream at every grocery store. American's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.

Yours,

Fatma

Test (1) on Unit (1)

Page 70

To :	mohamed@yahoo.com
From :	mazen@yahoo.com
Subject :	The dessert I ate

Dear Mohamed,

How are you ? I like ice cream. It's my favourite dessert. My favourite flavour is chocolate. It's delicious. There's an ice cream shop near my house. I eat ice cream every Friday.

Yours,

Mazen

Test (2) on Unit (1)

Page 73

"My visit to the Egyptian Museum"

Yesterday, I visited the Egyptian Museum. I went with my family. We saw

the Mummy rooms. The museum is near my house. I liked it a lot. It's a nice place. It's open daily.



General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 83

"In the restaurant"

Next week, I'll go to the restaurant. I'll go with my family. We'll have lunch there. I think I'll have a steak. I like medium steak. My father will have spaghetti and meatballs. The prices are good.

General Exercises on Word Time

Page 89

"My favourite food"

There are many kinds of foods. My favourite food is chicken. I like to have chicken soup. I like to eat roast chicken, too. Mum cooks chicken for lunch. It's delicious. I'm going to have chicken today.

General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 106

To :	nadia@gmail.com
From :	salma@gmail.com
Subject :	A new Italian restaurant

Dear Nadia,

How are you ? I write this email to tell you about a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. It opened on May 5th. It serves lunch and dinner. It is open daily. It's clean and big. The prices are good.

Yours,

Salma

Test (3) on Unit (2)

Page 118

To :	adham@yahoo.com
From :	adel@gmail.com
Subject :	My daily breakfast

Dear Adham,

How are you ? It's nice to write this email to you. I'll tell you about my daily breakfast. I get up at seven o'clock every day. I have my breakfast with my family. We have beans, eggs and some cheese. We have some tea, too.

Yours,

Adel

Test (4) on Unit (2)

Page 121

"An Italian restaurant"

I like to eat in Italian restaurants. I like spaghetti and meatballs. The food is delicious. I always go there with my brother. My brother likes to eat pizza. Children under five are free. The prices are good.

Unit (3)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 131

"At the bakery"

There is a bakery in my street. It's next to my house. There are many kinds of pies there. There are apple, peach, lemon and cherry pies. I like cherry pies. They are ten pounds each. The prices are good.

General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time :

Page 147

"My holiday"

I like holidays. My holiday is on Friday. I stay home with my family. I like to help my

family. I do the laundry by myself. My dad buys the groceries by himself. We watch TV at night.

Test (5) on Unit (3)

Page 166

To :	nada@yahoo.com
From :	ahmed@gmail.com
Subject :	My favourite pie

Dear Nada,

How are you doing ? I'll tell you about my favourite pie. I like all pies. But my favourite is apple pie. It's delicious. It's not expensive. The baker gets a fresh pie for me.

Yours,

Ahmed

Test (6) on Unit (3)

Page 169

"Supermarkets"

Supermarkets are nice places. There is a big supermarket near my house. It's open daily. I like going there. Dad and I go to buy groceries from the supermarket. I put groceries in a trolley. The prices are good.

Unit (4)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 182

"Phone call"

Yesterday, I called my friend Ali. But he wasn't there. His dad told me that he went to the park. I asked him to take a message. I told him my name and number. He'll give Ali my message. I'll see Ali at 1:00.

General Exercises on Word Time

Page 188

"Film studio"

I'm going to visit a film studio. I'm going to visit it next week. I like watching the actors. They put on make-up and wear wigs. They drive sports cars. They are nice people. They sign autographs for me.

Test (7) on Unit (4)

Page 216

To :	noura@yahoo.com
From :	aya@yahoo.com
Subject :	My visit to Alexandria

Dear Noura,

How is your family? I want to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Last Friday, we went to Alexandria by train. We stayed at a hotel. The hotel was near the beach. We went to the beach at 2 p.m. We had a nice time in Alexandria.

Yours,

Aya

Test (8) on Unit (4)

Page 219

"Visiting a film studio"

I went to a film studio. They make all kinds of films at that studio. Today, they were making an adventure film. I watched the actors rehearse. They put on make-up. I talked to a film star. He was really nice.

Unit (5)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 229

To :	ali@yahoo.com
From :	hany@yahoo.com
Subject :	My sister is ill

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I write this email to tell you about my sister. She is ill. She has the flu. She is in the hospital. I visit her every day. She's doing better today.

Yours,

Hany

General Exercises on Word Time

Page 235

"Daily activities"

I do many activities every day. I always get up early. I take the underground to my school. I meet my friends at school. We take a maths test twice a week. We read stories. I go home at 2:00 and feed my birds.

General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time

Page 242

"My school day"

I go to school five times a week. I always walk to school. I never take the underground to school. I take a maths test once a week. I like English and maths. I like to meet my friend at the break. I go back home at 3 p.m.

General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 249

To :	asmaahmed@hotmail.com
From :	combined
Subject :	My little sister Magy

Dear Asmaa,

How is your family ? I have a big problem. My little sister Magy is a pest. She follows me all the time. She bothers my friends, too. She takes my things without asking. Mum tells me to be patient, but I can't. What can I do ?

Your friend,

Sara Ramy

Test (9) on Unit (5)

Page 261

"At the park"

There is a park near my house. There are a lot of trees. I always go to the park with my friends. We play football. On Fridays I go with my family to the park. We have lunch there. We have a nice time.

Test (10) on Unit (5)

Page 264

To :	ahmed@yahoo.com
From :	hatem@yahoo.com
Subject :	My family

Dear Ahmed,

How are you doing ? I want to tell you about my family. My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital near the train station. My mother is a teacher. She works in a school near our house. I have a little sister.

Yours,

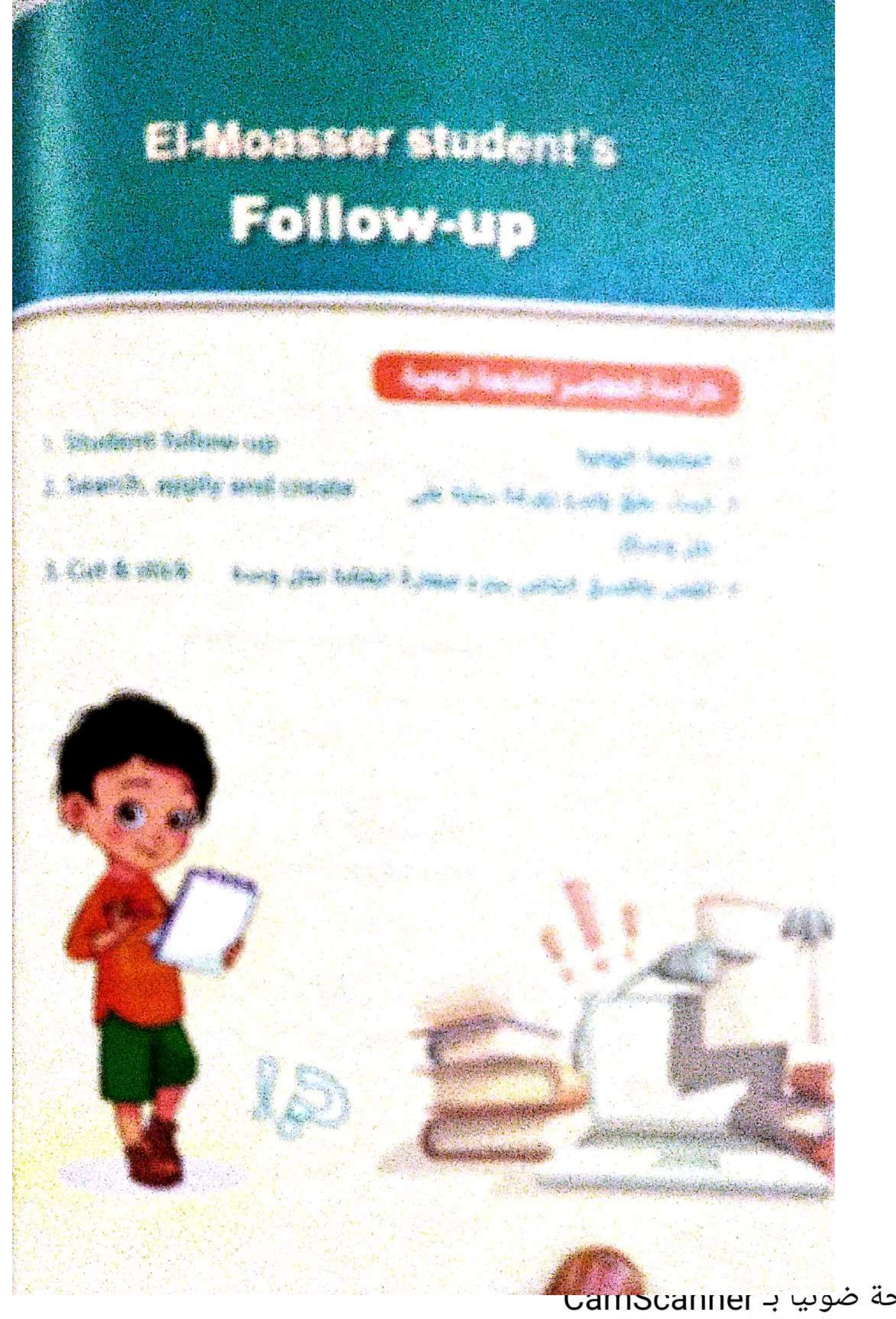
Hatem

Mini Test on Unit (5)

Page 276

"Meeting a friend"

Ali is my friend. I meet him every Friday. We meet at the park. The park is near my house. We talk a lot. We always play football in the park. I love my friend Ali very much.


El-Moasser student's
Follow-up

1. Dictation الإملاء

[illegible]

Unit 1

Dictation الإملاء Conversation Time

daily	....	....	حركة المرور
foreigner	....	....	إيصال
free	....	....	[illegible]

Dictation الإملاء Word Time

school	....	....	مكتبة
barber 's shop	....	....	محطة قطار
pavement	....	....	شارع

Dictation الإملاء Reading Time & Your Time

history	....	....	حلو (بعد الوجبات)
churn	....	....	مذاق / طعم
cone	....	....	بندقة

Unit 2

Dictation الإملاء Conversation Time

order	....	....	متوسط النضج
rare	....	....	طبق اليوم الخاص
well done	....	....	سلطة

Dictation الإملاء Word Time

waiter	....	....	ديك رومي مشوي
lemonade	....	....	شوربة دجاج
roast beef	....	....	فطيرة التفاح

Dictation الإملاء Reading Time & Your Time

Italian restaurant			وسط المدينة
owner			سعر / أجر
serve			دقيقي

Unit 3

Dictation الإملاء Conversation Time

What kind ...... ?			غالي الثمن
activities			فرقة
cherry			لذا

Dictation الإملاء Word Time

walk to school			يستقل الأتوبيس
do the laundry			يمكث بالمنزل
iron a shirt			يقطع خضروات

Dictation الإملاء Reading Time & Your Time

list			البقالة
money			عربة لنقل المشتريات
problem			مكان دفع الحساب

Unit 4

Dictation الإملاء Conversation Time

right now			ستوديو سينمائي
be back			متأخر عن
message			اسف

Dictation الإملاء Word Time

wear a wig	....	....	يضع مكياج
get a sunburn	....	....	يقود سيارة رياضية
take a nap	....	....	يتحدث في الهاتف

Dictation الإملاء Reading Time & Your Time

citadel	....	....	يتدرب على أداء تمثيلي
adventure film	....	....	نجم سينمائي
really	....	....	معبد

Unit 5

Dictation الإملاء Conversation Time

degree	....	....	ربما
cloudy	....	....	انفلونزا
serious	....	....	الطقس

Dictation الإملاء Word Time

feed the birds	....	....	يلتقي بصديق
read a newspaper	....	....	يزور متحفًا
take medicine	....	....	يستقل/يركب المترو

Dictation الإملاء Reading Time & Your Time

little	....	....	أكبر سنًا
pest	....	....	عادل / مُنصف
patient	....	....	إنتباه



Search, apply and create

بحث، طبق وابدع (ورقة بحثية على كل وحدة).

Unit 1 Egyptian Museum المتحف المصرى



Project المشروع

Make a signboard about the museum's hours, the entrance fees and its exhibits.

قم بعمل لافتة تتضمن عدد ساعات العمل الخاصة بالمتحف وتكلفة تذاكر الدخول والمعروضات الموجودة بالمتحف.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg - بنك المعرفة المصرى
* The internet - الإنترنت
* Student's books of different subjects - الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Signboard اللافتة الخاصة بك

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 2 Foods and drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات



Project المشروع

Make a poster about the foods and drinks you like and the foods and drinks you don't like.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن الأطعمة والمشروبات التى تحبها والأطعمة والمشروبات التى لا تحبها.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg - بنك المعرفة المصرى
* The internet - الإنترنت
* Student's books of different subjects - الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Poster الملصق الخاص بك



السوبر ماركت

Project المشروع

Make a card about your visit to the supermarket.

قم بعمل بطاقة عن زيارتك للسوبر ماركت

Project resources
مصادر المشروع

- https ://www.ekb.eg
  - بنك المعرفة المصرى
- The internet
  - الإنترنت
- Student's books of different subjects
  - الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Card
البطاقة الخاصة بك



زيارة إلى الإسكندرية

Project المشروع

Make an invitation to your friend to visit Alexandria.

قم بعمل دعوة لصديقك لزيارة الإسكندرية.

Project resources
مصادر المشروع

- https ://www.ekb.eg
  - بنك المعرفة المصرى
- The internet
  - الإنترنت
- Student's books of different subjects
  - الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Invitation
الدعوة الخاصة بك

....

....

....

....

....

....